

FORD **ECOSPORT** Owner's Manual



The information contained in this publication was correct at the time of going to print. In the interest of continuous development, we reserve the right to change specifications, design or equipment at any time without notice or obligation. No part of this publication may be reproduced, transmitted, stored in a retrieval system or translated into any language in any form by any means without our written permission. Errors and omissions excepted.

© Ford Motor Company 2017

All rights reserved.

Part Number: GN15-19G219-ZCA 201708 20171122101338

Table of Contents

Introduction

About This Manual.....	5
Symbols Glossary.....	5
Data Recording.....	7
Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	8
Special Notices.....	8
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	9

At a Glance

At a Glance.....	10
------------------	----

Child Safety

Installing Child Restraints.....	12
Child Restraint Positioning.....	15
Child Safety Locks.....	17

Seatbelts

Fastening the Seatbelts.....	18
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	19
Seatbelt Reminder.....	19

Supplementary Restraints System

Principle of Operation.....	21
Driver Airbag.....	21
Passenger Airbag.....	22
Side Airbags.....	22
Driver Knee Airbag.....	23
Side Curtain Airbags.....	23
Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	24
Airbag Disposal.....	25

Keys and Remote Controls

General Information on Radio Frequencies.....	26
Remote Control.....	26
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote Control.....	29

MyKey™

Principle of Operation.....	30
Creating a MyKey.....	31
Programming a MyKey.....	32
Clearing All MyKeys.....	32
Checking MyKey System Status.....	32
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	33
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	33

Doors and Locks

Locking and Unlocking.....	34
Keyless Entry.....	36
Tailgate.....	38

Security

Passive Anti-Theft System.....	40
--------------------------------	----

Steering Wheel

Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	41
Audio Control.....	41
Voice Control.....	42
Cruise Control.....	43
Information Display Control.....	43

Wipers and Washers

Windshield Wipers.....	44
Autowipers.....	44
Windshield Washers.....	45
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	46

Lighting

General Information.....	47
Lighting Control.....	47
Autolamps.....	48
Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	49
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	49
Daytime Running Lamps.....	50
Front Fog Lamps.....	50

Table of Contents

Headlamp Leveling.....	50
Direction Indicators.....	51
Interior Lamps.....	51

Windows and Mirrors

Power Windows.....	53
Exterior Mirrors.....	55
Interior Mirror.....	55
Moonroof.....	55

Instrument Cluster

Gauges.....	57
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	58
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	61

Information Displays

General Information.....	62
Trip Computer.....	65
Information Messages.....	65

Climate Control

Principle of Operation.....	74
Air Vents.....	74
Manual Climate Control.....	75
Automatic Climate Control.....	76
Hints on Controlling the Interior Climate.....	77
Heated Windows.....	80
Cabin Air Filter.....	80

Seats

Sitting in the Correct Position.....	81
Head Restraints.....	81
Manual Seats.....	82
Rear Seats.....	84

Auxiliary Power Points

Auxiliary Power Points.....	88
Cigar Lighter.....	88

Storage Compartments

Center Console.....	89
Cool Box.....	89
Glasses Holder.....	89
Under Seat Storage.....	90

Starting and Stopping the Engine

General Information.....	91
Ignition Switch.....	91
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	92
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	94
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	95

Fuel and Refueling

Safety Precautions.....	96
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	96
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	97
Running Out of Fuel.....	97
Catalytic Converter.....	97
Refueling.....	98
Fuel Consumption.....	99

Transmission

Manual Transmission.....	100
Automatic Transmission.....	101

Brakes

General Information.....	106
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	106
Parking Brake.....	107
Hill Start Assist.....	107

Traction Control

Principle of Operation.....	109
Using Traction Control.....	109

Table of Contents

Stability Control

Principle of Operation.....	110
Using Stability Control.....	110

Parking Aids

Principle of Operation.....	111
Rear Parking Aid.....	111
Rear View Camera.....	112

Cruise Control

Principle of Operation.....	116
Using Cruise Control.....	116

Driving Aids

Speed Limiter.....	118
Steering.....	118

Load Carrying

General Information.....	120
Luggage Anchor Points.....	120
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	120
Luggage Covers.....	121
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	121

Towing

Towing Points.....	123
Transporting the Vehicle.....	124
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission.....	124
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....	125

Driving Hints

Breaking-In.....	127
Cold Weather Precautions.....	127
Driving Through Water.....	127
Floor Mats.....	127

Roadside Emergencies

Hazard Flashers.....	129
----------------------	-----

Warning Triangle.....	129
Fuel Shutoff.....	129
Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	130
Post-Crash Alert System.....	132

Fuses

Fuse Box Locations.....	133
Fuse Specification Chart.....	133
Changing a Fuse.....	142

Maintenance

General Information.....	144
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	144
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L.....	145
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	146
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	147
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™/ 1.5L.....	148
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	148
Engine Oil Check.....	148
Engine Cooling Fan.....	149
Engine Coolant Check.....	149
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	150
Washer Fluid Check.....	151
Changing the 12V Battery.....	151
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	152
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	153
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	153
Removing a Headlamp.....	155
Changing a Bulb.....	155
Bulb Specification Chart.....	164
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	165

Vehicle Care

Cleaning the Exterior.....	166
Cleaning the Engine.....	167
Cleaning the Interior.....	167

Table of Contents

Cleaning Leather Seats.....	169
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	169
Cleaning the Wheels.....	169

Wheels and Tires

General Information.....	171
Tire Care.....	171
Using Snow Chains.....	173
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	174
Changing a Road Wheel.....	178
Tire Pressures.....	181
Lug Nuts.....	182

Capacities and Specifications

Engine Specifications - 1.5L, Gasoline.....	183
Engine Specifications - 1.5L Diesel.....	184
Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	185
Weights - 1.5L, Diesel, India.....	186
Weights - 1.5L, Gasoline, India, 5-Speed Manual Transmission.....	187
Weights - 1.5L, Gasoline, India, 6-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	188
Weights - 1.0L EcoBoost™, India.....	189
Vehicle Dimensions.....	190
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	192
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Diesel.....	192
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L.....	194
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	195

Audio System

General Information.....	197
USB Port.....	197

SYNC™ 3

General Information.....	199
Home Screen.....	209

Using Voice Recognition.....	209
Entertainment.....	215
Phone.....	219
Apps.....	225
Settings.....	227
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	238

Appendices

Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	250
End User License Agreement.....	253

Introduction

ABOUT THIS MANUAL

Thank you for choosing Ford. We recommend that you take some time to get to know your vehicle by reading this manual. The more that you know about your vehicle, the greater the safety and pleasure you will get from driving it.

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: This manual describes product features and options available throughout the range of available models, sometimes even before they are generally available. It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.

Note: Some of the illustrations in this manual may show features as used in different models, so may appear different to you on your vehicle.

Note: Always use and operate your vehicle in line with all applicable laws and regulations.

Note: Pass on this manual when selling your vehicle. It is an integral part of your vehicle.

This manual may qualify the location of a component as left-hand side or right-hand side. The side is determined when facing forward in the seat.



E154903

A Right-hand side.

B Left-hand side.

SYMBOLS GLOSSARY

These are some of the symbols you may see on your vehicle.



Safety alert.



See the Owner's Manual.



Air conditioning system.



Anti-lock braking system.



Avoid smoking, flames or sparks.



Battery.



Battery acid.



Brake fluid level.

Introduction



Brake system.



Brake failure.



Cabin air filter.



Check fuel cap.



Child safety door lock.



Child safety door unlock.



Child seat lower anchor.



Child seat tether anchor.



Cruise control.



Do not open when hot.



Electronic power steering malfunction.



Engine air filter.



Engine coolant.



Engine coolant temperature.



Engine oil.



Explosive gas.



Fan warning.



Fasten seatbelt.



Front airbag.



Front fog lamps.



Fuel pump reset.



Fuse compartment.



Hazard warning flashers.



Heated rear window.



Heated windshield.



Interior luggage compartment release.



Jack.



Keep out of reach of children.



Lighting control.



Low tire pressure warning.

Introduction



Maintain correct fluid level.



Panic alarm.



Parking aid.



Parking brake.



Power steering fluid.



Power windows.



Power window lockout.



Check Engine.



Service engine soon.



Side airbag.



Shield the eyes.



Stability control.



Windshield wash and wipe.

DATA RECORDING

A large number of electronic components of your vehicle contain data storage modules temporarily or permanently storing technical data about the condition of the vehicle, events and malfunctions.

In general, this technical information documents the condition of parts, modules, systems or the environment:

- Operating conditions of system components (e.g. filling levels).
- Status messages of the vehicle and its individual components (e.g. number of wheel revolutions/rotational speed, deceleration, lateral acceleration).
- Malfunctions and defects in important system components (e.g. lighting and brake system).
- Vehicle reactions in particular driving situations (e.g. inflation of an airbag, activation of the stability regulation system).
- Environmental conditions (e.g. temperature).

These data are exclusively technical and help identification and correction of malfunctions as well as optimisation of vehicle functions. Motion profiles indicating travelled routes cannot be created with these data.

If services are used (e.g. repair works, service processes, warranty cases, quality assurance), employees of the service network (including manufacturers) are able to read out this technical information from the event and malfunction data storage modules using special diagnostic devices. If required, you will receive further information. After a malfunction has been corrected, these data are deleted from the malfunction storage module or they are constantly overwritten.

Introduction

When using the vehicle, situations may occur in which these technical data related to other information (accident report, damages on the vehicle, witness statements, etc.) may be associated with a specific person - possibly, with the assistance of an expert.

Additional functions contractually agreed upon with the client (e.g. vehicle location in emergency cases) allow the transmission of particular vehicle data from the vehicle.

Note: *Do not connect wireless plug-in devices to the data link connector. Unauthorized third parties could gain access to vehicle data and impair the performance of safety related systems. Only allow repair facilities that follow our service and repair instructions to connect their equipment to the data link connector.*

REPLACEMENT PARTS RECOMMENDATION

We have built your vehicle to the highest standards using quality parts. We recommend that you demand the use of genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts whenever your vehicle requires scheduled maintenance or repair. You can clearly identify genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts by looking for the Ford, FoMoCo or Motorcraft branding on the parts or their packaging.

Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs

One of the best ways for you to make sure that your vehicle provides years of service is to have it maintained in line with our recommendations using parts that conform to the specifications detailed in this Owner's Manual. Genuine Ford and Motorcraft parts meet or exceed these specifications.

Collision Repairs

We hope that you never experience a collision, but accidents do happen. Genuine Ford replacement collision parts meet our stringent requirements for fit, finish, structural integrity, corrosion protection and dent resistance. During vehicle development we validate that these parts deliver the intended level of protection as a whole system. A great way to know for sure you are getting this level of protection is to use genuine Ford replacement collision parts.

Warranty on Replacement Parts

Genuine Ford and Motorcraft replacement parts are the only replacement parts that benefit from a Ford Warranty. The Ford Warranty may not cover damage caused to your vehicle as a result of failed non-Ford parts. For additional information, refer to the terms and conditions of the Ford Warranty.

SPECIAL NOTICES

Note: *If converting or modifying your vehicle from production specification, see your authorized dealer.*

Note: *Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents on the tag.*

We have installed the radio frequency identifier (RFID) tag in your vehicle in compliance with the government directives under the MORTH final notification GSR 207 (E), dated 08 April 2013. Ford does not in any way guarantee or warrant the quality, contents, accuracy of the product or data contained in the tag.

This tag is for the exclusive use of government authorities or personnel authorized by the government. The responsibility of keeping and maintaining the RFID tag is with the owner of the vehicle.

Introduction

Note: *The tag is on the top left-hand side of the windshield.*

MOBILE COMMUNICATIONS EQUIPMENT

WARNING

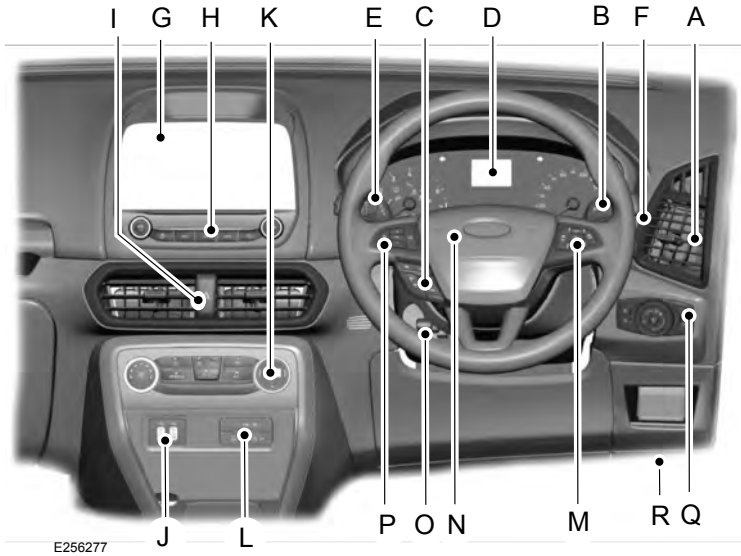


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Using mobile communications equipment is becoming increasingly important in the conduct of business and personal affairs. However, you must not compromise your own or others' safety when using such equipment. Mobile communications can enhance personal safety and security when appropriately used, particularly in emergency situations. Safety must be paramount when using mobile communications equipment to avoid negating these benefits. Mobile communication equipment includes, but is not limited to, cellular phones, pagers, portable email devices, text messaging devices and portable two-way radios.

At a Glance

Instrument Panel Overview



- A Air vents. See **Air Vents** (page 74).
- B Direction indicators. See **Direction Indicators** (page 51).
- C Cruise control switches. See **Using Cruise Control** (page 116).
- D Instrument cluster. See **Instrument Cluster** (page 57).
- E Wiper lever. See **Wipers and Washers** (page 44).
- F Push Button Ignition Switch See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 91).
- G Information and entertainment display.
- H Audio unit. See **Audio System** (page 197).
- I Hazard warning flasher switch. See **Hazard Flashers** (page 129).
- J USB port. See **USB Port** (page 197).
- K Climate controls. See **Climate Control** (page 74).

At a Glance

- L TCS off, Parking aids off and Start / Stop off. See **Traction Control** (page 109). See **Parking Aids** (page 111). See **Starting and Stopping the Engine** (page 91).
- M Audio and Voice control. See **Audio Control** (page 41). See **Voice Control** (page 42).
- N Horn.
- O Steering wheel adjustment. See **Adjusting the Steering Wheel** (page 41).
- P Information display controls. See **Information Displays** (page 62).
- Q Lighting control. See **Lighting Control** (page 47).
- R Hood release lever. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 144).

Child Safety

INSTALLING CHILD RESTRAINTS







E161855





E68916

WARNINGS

-  Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.
-  Read and follow the manufacturer's instructions when you are installing a child restraint.
-  Do not modify child restraints in any way.
-  Do not hold a child on your lap when your vehicle is moving.

WARNINGS

-  Do not leave children or pets unattended in your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.
-  If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the child restraints checked.

Secure children that are less than 150 centimeters tall or 12 years old in a suitable child restraint in the rear seat.

Note: Children should be properly restrained in a rear seating position whenever possible. When using a child safety seat ensure that the rear seat back is in the most upright position.

Child Restraints for Different Mass Groups

Use the correct child restraint as follows:

Baby Safety Seat



E68918

Secure children that weigh less than 13 kilograms (29 pounds) in a rearward facing baby safety seat (Group 0+) in the rear seat.

Child Safety

Child Safety Seat








E68920

Secure children that weigh between 13 and 18 kilograms (29 and 40 pounds) in a child safety seat (Group 1) in the rear seat.

Booster Seats

WARNINGS

-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with only the lap strap of the seatbelt.
-  Do not install a booster seat or a booster cushion with a seatbelt that is slack or twisted.
-  Do not put the shoulder section of the seatbelt or allow the child to put the shoulder section of the seatbelt under their arm or behind their back. Failure to follow this instruction could reduce the effectiveness of the seatbelt and increase the risk of injury or death in a crash.
-  Do not use pillows, books or towels to boost your child's height. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.
-  Make sure that your children sit in an upright position.

Secure children that weigh greater than 15 kg but are less than 150 cm tall in a booster seat or on a booster cushion.

Note: When using a child seat on a rear seat, make sure that the child seat rests tightly against the vehicle seat. It may be necessary to lift or remove the head restraint. See **Head Restraints** (page 81).

Booster Seat (Group 2)



E70710

We recommend that you use a booster seat that combines a cushion with a backrest instead of a booster cushion only. The raised seating position will allow you to position the shoulder strap of the adult safety belt over the center of your child's shoulder and the lap strap tightly across its hips.

Booster Cushion (Group 3)



E68924

Child Safety

ISOFIX Anchor Points (If Equipped)

WARNING



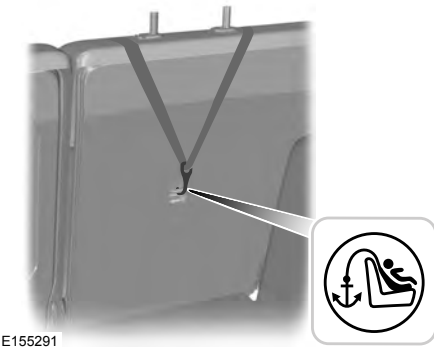
Use an anti-rotation device when using the ISOFIX system. We recommend the use of a top tether or support leg.

Note: When you are purchasing an ISOFIX restraint, make sure that you know the correct mass group and ISOFIX size class for the intended seating locations. See **Child Restraint Positioning** (page 15).

Your vehicle is fitted with ISOFIX anchor points that accommodate universally approved ISOFIX child restraints.

The ISOFIX system comprises of two rigid attachment arms on the child restraint that attach to anchor points on the rear seats, where the cushion and backrest meet. Tether anchor points may also be fitted.

Top tether anchor points



E155291

Attaching a child seat with top tethers

WARNING



Do not attach a tether strap to anything other than the correct tether anchor point.

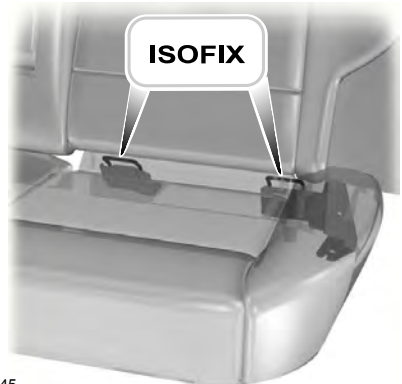
Note: Where applicable, remove the luggage cover to ease installation. See **Luggage Covers** (page 121).

WARNING



Make sure that the top tether strap is not slack or twisted and is properly located on the anchor point.

1. Route the tether strap to the anchor point.



E87145

2. Push the child seat back firmly to engage the ISOFIX lower anchor points.
3. Tighten the tether strap in line with the child seat manufacturer's instructions.

Child Safety

CHILD RESTRAINT POSITIONING (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.



If you use a child restraint that has a support leg, make sure the support leg rests securely on the floor.



If you use a child restraint and a seatbelt, make sure that the seatbelt is not slack or twisted.

WARNINGS



When using a child restraint on a rear seat, the child restraint must rest tightly against the vehicle seat. It must not touch the head restraint. If necessary remove the head restraint.

See an authorized dealer for the latest details relating to our recommended child restraints.

Note: When using a child seat on a front seat, always adjust the front passenger seat as far back as possible. If it proves difficult to tighten the lap section of the safety belt without slack remaining, adjust the seatback to the fully upright position and raise the height of the seat.

Seating positions	Mass group categories				
	0	0+	1	2	3
	Up to 10 kg (22 lbs)	Up to 13 kg (29 lbs)	9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)	15 - 25 kg (33 - 55 lbs)	22 - 36 kg (46 - 79 lbs)
Front Passenger	X	X	UF	UF	UF
Rear Outboard	U	U	U	U	U
Rear center	X	X	X	X	X

X Not suitable for children in this mass group.

U Suitable for universal category child seats approved for use in this mass group.

UF Suitable for universal category forward facing child seats approved for use in this mass group.

Child Safety

ISOFIX Child Seats

Seating positions		Mass group categories	
		0+	1
		Rear facing	Forward facing
		13 kg (Up to 29 lbs)	9 - 18 kg (20 - 40 lbs)
Rear outboard seat ISOFIX	Size class	D, E*	A, B, B1*
	Seat type	IL	IL, IUF

IL Suitable for particular ISOFIX child restraints systems of the semi-universal category. Please consult child restraints systems suppliers' vehicle recommendation lists.

IUF Suitable for ISOFIX forward facing child restraints systems of universal category approved for use in this mass group and ISOFIX size class.

*The ISOFIX size class for both universal and semi-universal child restraints systems is defined by the capital letters A to G. These identification letters are displayed on ISOFIX child restraints.

Child Safety

CHILD SAFETY LOCKS

WARNING



You cannot open the rear doors from inside if you have put the child safety locks on.



E155301

Rear Left-Hand Door

Turn anti-clockwise to lock and clockwise to unlock.

Rear Right-Hand Door

Turn clockwise to lock and anti-clockwise to unlock.

Seatbelts

FASTENING THE SEATBELTS

WARNINGS



The wearing of a seatbelt is a mandatory requirement. Seatbelts should be properly fastened and adjusted before the vehicle is driven. Adjust the driver's seat position before fastening the seatbelt.



Make sure that the seatbelts are securely stowed away when not in use and not outside your vehicle when closing the doors.



E165534

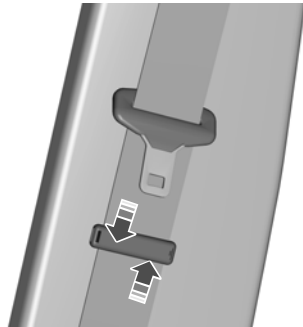
It may lock if you pull it sharply or if your vehicle is on a slope. Pull the seatbelt out steadily.

Press the red button on the buckle to release the belt. Hold the tongue and let it retract completely and smoothly to its stowed position.

Using a Sliding Clip (If Equipped)



E74124

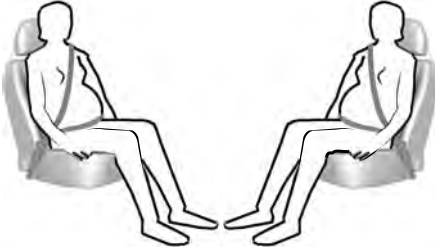


E253237

Seatbelts


Slide the clip away from the tongue so there is no loose webbing when an occupant or child seat is buckled up. You can also use the sliding clip to raise the tongue and prevent it from rattling or to ease access to the tongue.

Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy



E68587


WARNING

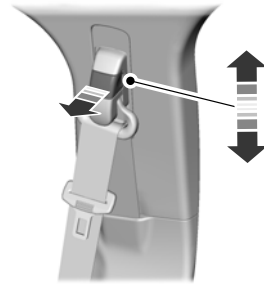
 Position the seatbelt correctly for your safety and that of your unborn child. Do not use only the lap strap or the shoulder strap.

Pregnant women should always wear their safety belt. The lap belt portion of a combination lap and shoulder belt should be positioned low across the hips below the belly and worn as tight as comfort will allow. The shoulder belt should be positioned to cross the middle of the shoulder and the center of the chest.

SEATBELT HEIGHT ADJUSTMENT (If Equipped)

WARNING

 Position the seatbelt height adjuster so that the seatbelt rests across the middle of your shoulder. Failure to adjust the seatbelt correctly could reduce its effectiveness and increase the risk of injury in a crash.




E145664

1. Pull the button and slide the height adjuster up or down.
2. Release the button and pull down on the height adjuster to make sure it is locked in place.

SEATBELT REMINDER

WARNING

 The system will only provide protection when you use the seatbelt correctly.

Seatbelts

The warning lamp illuminates and an audible warning will sound when the following conditions have been met:

- The front seatbelts have not been fastened.
- Your vehicle exceeds a relatively low speed.


It will also illuminate and sound if a front seatbelt is unfastened when your vehicle is moving.


If you do not fasten your seatbelt the warning switches off automatically after approximately five minutes.


Supplementary Restraints System


PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION


WARNINGS


 Extreme Hazard! Never use a rearward facing child restraint on a seat protected by an active airbag in front of it. Death or serious injury to the child can occur.

 Do not modify the front of your vehicle in any way. This could adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.


 Wear a seatbelt and keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. Only when you use the seatbelt correctly, can it hold you in a position that allows the airbag to achieve its optimum effect. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Repairs to the steering wheel, steering column, seats, airbags and seatbelts must be carried out by an authorized dealer. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

 Keep the areas in front of the airbags free from obstruction. Do not affix anything to or over the airbag covers. Objects could become projectiles during airbag deployment. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 Do not poke sharp objects into areas where airbags are fitted. This could damage and adversely affect deployment of the airbags. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

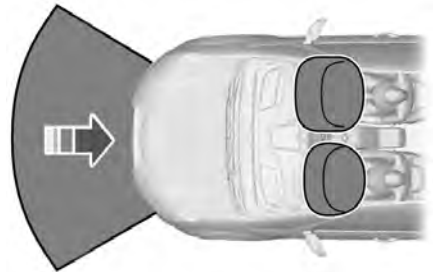
WARNINGS

 Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

Note: *A loud bang sounds and there is a cloud of harmless powdery residue if an airbag deploys. This is normal.*

Note: *Only wipe airbag covers with a damp cloth.*

DRIVER AIRBAG

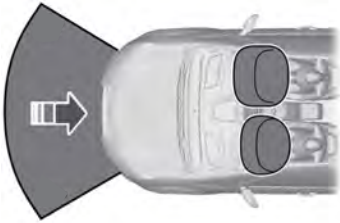


E74302

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the airbag will not deploy.

Supplementary Restraints System

PASSENGER AIRBAG



E151127



The passenger airbag will deploy during significant frontal or near-frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupant, thus cushioning forward body movement. During minor frontal collisions, overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the front passenger airbag will not deploy.

SIDE AIRBAGS (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

-  Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the seatbacks (of the front seats), or in front seat areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.
-  Do not lean your head on the door. The side airbag could injure you as it deploys from the side of the seatback.
-  Do not use accessory seat covers. The use of accessory seat covers may prevent the deployment of the side airbags and increase the risk of injury in an accident.

WARNINGS

-  Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the supplementary restraint system or associated components. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.
-  If a supplementary restraint system component has deployed, it will not function again. Have the system and associated components inspected as soon as possible. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.



E72658

The side airbags are on the outermost side of each front seat backrest.

There is a label attached to the side of each backrest to indicate this.

The system consists of the following:

- A label or embossed side panel indicating that side airbags are fitted to your vehicle.
- Side airbags inside the driver and front passenger seatbacks.
- Front Passenger sensing system.

Supplementary Restraints System



E152533

The side airbags are designed to inflate between the door panel and the occupant to enhance the protection in certain crashes.



Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag**

Indicator (page 24).

DRIVER KNEE AIRBAG

WARNING



Do not attempt to open the airbag cover.

The airbag will deploy during significant frontal and near frontal collisions. The airbag will inflate within a few thousandths of a second and deflate on contact with the occupants, thus providing a cushion between the driver's knees and the steering column. During overturns, rear collisions and side collisions, the knee airbag will not deploy.

Note: *The airbag has a lower deployment threshold than the front airbags. During a minor collision, it is possible that only the knee airbag will deploy.*

SIDE CURTAIN AIRBAGS

WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the headliner at the siderail that may come into contact with a deploying side curtain airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



Do not lean your head on the door. The side curtain airbag could injure you as it deploys from the headliner.



Do not attempt to service, repair, or modify the side curtain airbags, its fuses, the A, B, or C pillar trim, or the headliner on a vehicle containing side curtain airbags. Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible.



All occupants of the vehicle including the driver should always wear their safety belts even when an airbag supplemental restraint system and side curtain airbag is provided.



To reduce risk of injury, do not obstruct or place objects in the deployment path of the side curtain airbag.



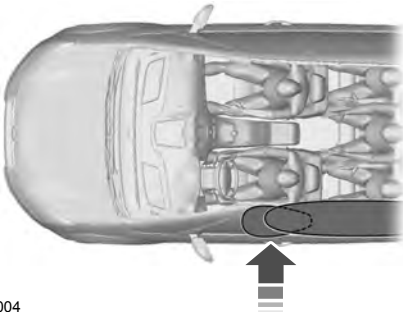
If the side curtain airbags have deployed, the side curtain airbags will not function again. The side curtain airbags (including the A, B and C pillar trim and headliner) must be serviced by an authorized dealer. If the side curtain airbag is not replaced, the unrepaired area will increase the risk of injury in a crash.

The side curtain airbags will deploy during significant side crashes. The side curtain airbags are mounted to the roof side-rail sheet metal, behind the headliner, above each row of seats. In certain sideways crashes, the side curtain airbag on the

Supplementary Restraints System

impacted side of the vehicle will be activated. The side curtain airbags are designed to inflate between the side window area and occupants to further enhance protection provided in side impact crashes.

The system consists of the following:



E75004

- Side curtain airbags located above the trim panels over the front and rear side windows identified by a label or wording on the headliner or roof-pillar trim.
- A flexible headliner which opens above the side doors to allow side air curtain deployment.



Crash sensors and monitoring system with readiness indicator. See **Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator** (page 24).

Children 9 years old and under should always be properly seated in the back seats. The side curtain airbags will not interfere with children seated using a properly installed child or booster seat because it is designed to inflate downward from the headliner above the doors along the side window opening.

The design and development of the side curtain airbags included recommended testing procedures that were developed by a group of automotive safety experts known as the Side Airbag Technical Working Group. These recommended testing procedures help reduce the risk of injuries related to the deployment of side curtain airbags.

CRASH SENSORS AND AIRBAG INDICATOR (If Equipped)

WARNING



Modifying or adding equipment to the front end of your vehicle (including hood, bumper system, frame, front end body structure, tow hooks and hood pins) may affect the performance of the airbag system, increasing the risk of injury. Do not modify or add equipment to the front end of your vehicle.

Your vehicle has a collection of crash and occupant sensors. These provide information to the restraints control module which could deploy the front seatbelt pretensioners, driver airbag, driver knee airbag, passenger airbag, seat mounted side airbags, and the side curtain airbags. Based on the type of crash, frontal impact or side impact, the restraints control module will deploy the appropriate safety devices.

The restraints control module also monitors the readiness of the above safety devices plus the crash and occupant sensors. The readiness of the safety system is indicated by a warning lamp in the instrument cluster or by a backup tone if the warning lamp is not working. Routine maintenance of the airbag is not required.

A difficulty with the system is indicated by one or more of the following:

Supplementary Restraints System



The lamp will not illuminate immediately when you switch the ignition on.

- The lamp will either flash or remain on.
- A series of five beeps will be heard. The tone pattern will repeat periodically until the problem, the lamp or both are repaired.

If any of these things happen, even intermittently, have the supplemental restraint system checked by an authorized dealer immediately. Unless serviced, the system may not function correctly in the event of a crash.

The seatbelt pretensioners and the front airbag supplemental restraint system are designed to deploy when your vehicle sustains longitudinal deceleration sufficient to cause the restraints control module to deploy a safety device.

The fact that the seatbelt pretensioners or front airbags did not deploy for both front seat occupants in a crash does not mean that something is wrong with the system. It means the restraints control module determined that the crash conditions were not appropriate to deploy these safety devices.

- The design of the front airbags is to deploy only in frontal and near-frontal crashes (not rollovers, side impacts or rear impacts unless the crash causes sufficient longitudinal deceleration).
- The design of the seatbelt pretensioners is to deploy in frontal and near-frontal crashes, and may also deploy when a side curtain airbag deploys.

- The knee airbag may deploy based on crash severity and occupant conditions.
- The design of the side airbags and side curtain airbags is to deploy in certain side impact crashes. These devices may deploy in other types of crashes if your vehicle experiences sufficient sideways motion or deformation.

AIRBAG DISPOSAL

Contact your authorized dealer as soon as possible. Airbags must be disposed of by qualified personnel.

Keys and Remote Controls

GENERAL INFORMATION ON RADIO FREQUENCIES

Note: Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment.

The typical operating range for your transmitter is approximately 10 m.

A decrease in operating range could be caused by:

- weather conditions
- nearby radio towers
- structures around your vehicle
- other vehicles parked next to your vehicle.

The radio frequency used by your remote control can also be used by other radio transmitters, for example amateur radios, medical equipment, wireless headphones, wireless remote controls, cell phones, battery chargers and alarm systems. If the frequencies are jammed, you will not be able to use your remote control. You can lock and unlock the doors with the key.

Note: Make sure your vehicle is locked before leaving it unattended.

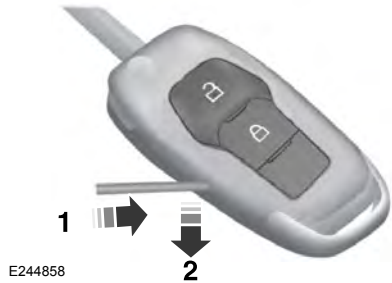
Note: If you are in range, the remote control will operate if you press any button unintentionally.

Note: The remote control contains sensitive electrical components. Exposure to moisture or impact may cause permanent damage.

REMOTE CONTROL

The Dealer can program a maximum of six remote controls to your vehicle.

Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade (If Equipped)



1. Insert a screwdriver as far as possible into the slot on the side of the remote control, gently push the clip.
2. Press the clip down to release the battery cover.



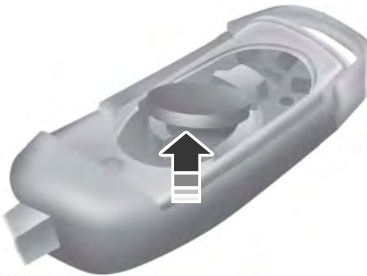
3. Carefully remove the cover.

Keys and Remote Controls



E151800

4. Turn the remote control over to remove the battery.



E151801

Note: Do not touch the battery contacts or the printed circuit board with the screwdriver.

5. Install a new battery (3V CR 2032) with the + facing upwards.
6. Replace the battery cover.

Remote Control

Intelligent Access Key (If equipped)



E256647

Note: You may not be able to shift out of park (P) unless the intelligent access key is inside your vehicle (automatic transmission).

The intelligent access keys operate the power locks. The key must be in your vehicle to use the push button start.

Remove Key Blade

The intelligent access key also contains a removable key blade that you can use to unlock your vehicle.

Keys and Remote Controls



E256648

Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Replacing the Battery

Note: Refer to local regulations when disposing of transmitter batteries.

Note: Do not wipe off any grease on the battery terminals or on the back surface of the circuit board.

Note: Replacing the battery does not erase the programmed key from your vehicle. The transmitter should operate normally.

A message appears in the information display when the remote control battery is low. See **Information Messages** (page 65).



E256648

1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.

Keys and Remote Controls



E218401

2. Twist a thin coin under the tab hidden behind the key blade head to remove the battery cover.



E218402

3. Insert a suitable tool, for example a screwdriver, in the position shown and carefully remove the battery.
4. Install a new battery with the + facing upward.
5. Reinstall the battery cover and the key blade.

The remote control uses one coin-type three-volt lithium battery CR2450 or equivalent.

REPLACING A LOST KEY OR REMOTE CONTROL

Replacement keys or remote controls can be purchased from an authorized dealer. Authorized dealers can program remote controls for your vehicle. See **Passive Anti-Theft System** (page 40).

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The system allows you to program keys with restricted driving modes to promote good driving habits. All but one of the keys programmed to the vehicle can be activated with these restricted modes.

Any keys that have not been programmed are referred to as administrator keys or admin keys. These can be used to:

- Create a MyKey.
- Program configurable MyKey settings.
- Clear all MyKey features.

When you have created a MyKey, you can access the following information using the information display:

- How many admin keys and MyKeys are programmed to your vehicle.
- The total distance your vehicle has traveled using a MyKey.

Note: All MyKeys are programmed to the same settings. You cannot program them individually.

Note: For vehicles with keyless start, when both a MyKey and an admin key are present, the admin fob will be recognized by the vehicle to start the engine.

Non-configurable Settings

The following settings cannot be changed by an admin key user:

- Seatbelt minder. You cannot disable this feature. The audio system will mute when the front seat occupants' seatbelts are not fastened.
- Early low fuel. The low-fuel warning activates earlier, giving the MyKey user more time to refuel.
- Driver assist features, if equipped on your vehicle, are forced on: parking aid, blind spot information system (BLIS) with cross traffic alert, lane departure warning and forward collision warning system.

Configurable Settings

WARNING



Do not set MyKey maximum speed limit to a limit that will prevent the driver from maintaining a safe speed considering posted speed limits and prevailing road conditions. The driver is always responsible to drive in accordance with local laws and prevailing conditions. Failure to do so could result in accident or injury.

With an admin key, you can configure certain MyKey settings when you first create a MyKey and before you recycle the key or restart the vehicle.

MyKey™ (If Equipped)

You can also change the settings afterward with an admin key:

- Vehicle speed limits can be set. Warnings will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when your vehicle reaches the set speed. You cannot override the set speed by fully depressing the accelerator pedal.
- Once you select a speed, it will be shown in the display followed by an audible tone when the set vehicle speed is exceeded.
- Audio system maximum volume of 45%. A message will be shown in the display when you attempt to exceed the limited volume. Also, the speed sensitive compensated volume (automatic volume control) feature will be disabled.
- Always on setting. When this is selected, you will not be able to disable emergency assistance or the do not disturb feature (if your vehicle is equipped with these features).

CREATING A MYKEY

Vehicles With a Key

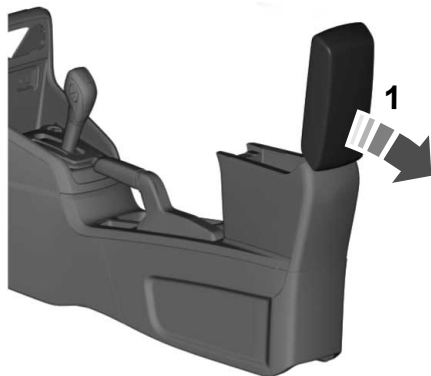
1. Insert the key you want to program into the ignition.
2. Switch the ignition on.
3. Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK**.
4. Select **Create MyKey** and press **OK**.
5. When prompted, press and hold **OK** until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted the next time you use it.

Note: Make sure you label the MyKey so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

Vehicles With Push-Button Start

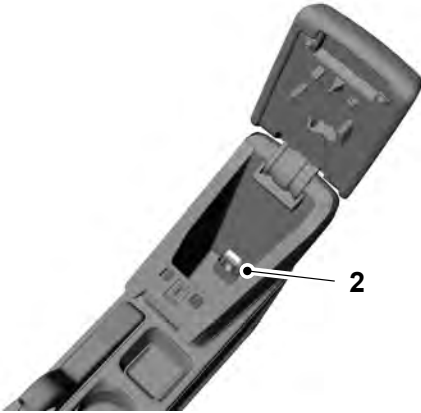
Switch the ignition on using an admin key.

Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK**.



E260637

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.



E260552

2. Place the key you want to program in the back up slot as shown.
3. Select **Create MyKey** and press **OK**.
4. When prompted, press and hold **OK** until you see a message informing you to label this key as a MyKey. The key will be restricted the next time you use it.

Note: Make sure you label the MyKey so you can distinguish it from the admin keys.

PROGRAMMING A MYKEY

Optional Settings

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK**.
3. Use the arrow buttons to scroll to an optional feature.
4. Press **OK** to make a selection.

CLEARING ALL MYKEYS

1. Switch the ignition on using an admin key.
2. Access the main menu using the information display. Select **MyKey** and press **OK**.
3. Scroll to **Clear All** and press **OK**.
4. Press and hold **OK** until you see a message informing you that all MyKeys have been cleared.

Note: When you clear your MyKeys, you remove all restrictions and return all MyKeys to their original admin key status.

CHECKING MYKEY SYSTEM STATUS

You can find information about your programmed MyKeys by using the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 62).

MyKey Distance

Tracks the distance when drivers use a MyKey. The only way to delete the accumulated distance is by using an admin key to clear all MyKeys. If the distance does not accumulate as expected, then the intended user is not using the MyKey, or an admin key user recently cleared and then recreated a MyKey.

Number of MyKeys

Indicates the number of MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to detect how many MyKeys you have for your vehicle and determine when all MyKeys have been deleted.

Number of Admin Keys

Indicates how many admin keys are programmed to your vehicle. Use this feature to determine how many admin keys you have for your vehicle, and detect if an additional MyKey has been programmed.

USING MYKEY WITH REMOTE START SYSTEMS

MyKey is not compatible with non-Ford-approved aftermarket remote start systems. If you choose to install a remote start system, please see an authorized dealer for a Ford-approved remote start system.

MYKEY TROUBLESHOOTING

All Vehicles

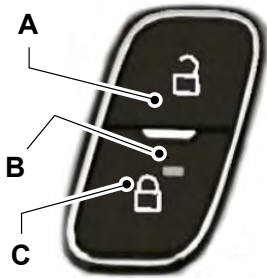
Condition	Potential Causes
I cannot create a MyKey.	The key in the ignition is not an admin key. The key in the ignition is the only key. There always has to be at least one admin key.
I cannot program the optional settings.	The key in the ignition is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See Creating a MyKey (page 31).
I cannot clear the MyKeys.	The key in the ignition is not an admin key. There are no MyKeys programmed to your vehicle. See Creating a MyKey (page 31).
I have lost the only admin key.	Purchase a new key from an authorized dealer.
The MyKey distance does not accumulate.	The MyKey is not being used by the intended user. The MyKeys have been cleared. See Clearing All MyKeys (page 32).

Doors and Locks

LOCKING AND UNLOCKING

Note: All doors will be automatically unlocked when the airbag deploys due to impact and following this the hazard warning flashers will flash.

Power Door Locks (If Equipped)



E253441

The power door lock switch is located at the front part of the front door inner handle.

- A Press the top button once. The doors will unlock.
- B Door lock indication.
- C Press the button once. The doors will lock.

Door Lock Indicator

A LED on the power door lock control illuminates when you lock the door.

They will remain illuminated for up to five minutes after you switch the ignition off.

Door Lock Switch Inhibitor

When you electronically lock your vehicle while the ignition is off, the power door lock switch will no longer operate after twenty seconds. You must unlock your vehicle with the remote control, or switch the ignition on to restore function to these switches. You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Messages** (page 65).

Remote Control

You can use the remote control any time the vehicle is not running.

When the ignition is on and your vehicle speed is at or below 5 km/h, you can use the remote control to lock and unlock the doors.

Unlocking the Doors

Note: You can unlock the driver door with the key. Use the key when the remote control is not functioning.

Note: When you lock your vehicle for several weeks, the remote control switches off. Your vehicle must be unlocked and the engine started using the key. Unlocking and starting your vehicle once will enable the remote control.



If your vehicle is equipped with a Passive Entry System, pressing this button will unlock all doors. Turn signals will flash once.

If it is not equipped with a Passive Entry System, pressing this button will unlock the driver's door. The turn signals will flash once. Press the button again within three seconds to unlock all doors. The turn signals will flash once.

Doors and Locks

Reprogramming the Unlocking Function

You can reprogram the unlocking function. Using the remote control, you can choose between unlocking only the driver door or all doors in the first press. To do so, press and hold lock and unlock buttons in the remote control for 4 seconds. The turn lamps will flash twice. To revert, repeat the process. You can also reprogram through the cluster. See **Information Displays** (page 62).

Locking the Doors



Press the button to lock all the doors. The direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again within three seconds to confirm that all the doors are closed. The doors will lock again, the horn will sound once and the direction indicators will flash if all the doors and the luggage compartment are closed.

Note: *If Hood or luggage compartment is open when you press the button once, and the direction indicators will not flash. This indicates your vehicle did not lock. If a rear door, the luggage compartment or the hood is open (on vehicles with an anti-theft alarm) when you press the button again within three seconds, the horn sounds twice and the direction indicators will not flash. This indicates your vehicle locked but there is one or more items open.*

Note: *The direction indicators will flash as locking feedback only when ignition is OFF.*

Automatic Relocking (If Equipped)

The doors will relock automatically if you do not open a door within 45 seconds of unlocking the doors with the remote control. The door locks and the alarm will return to their previous state.

Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key

Note: *Do not leave your keys in your vehicle.*

Locking with the Key

Turn the top of the key toward the front of your vehicle.

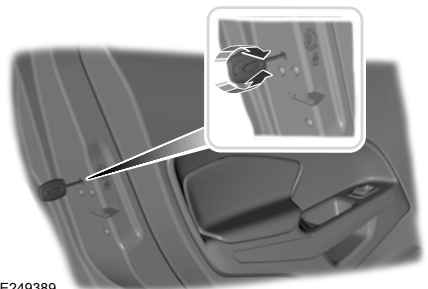
Unlocking with the Key

Note: *If the child safety locks are on and you pull the interior handle, you will only switch off the emergency locking, not the child safety lock. You can only open the doors using the external door handle.*

Note: *If the doors have been unlocked using this method, the doors must be locked individually until the central locking function has been repaired.*

Turn the top of the key toward the rear of your vehicle. You can unlock all other doors individually by pulling the interior door handles.

Note: *When the central locking function fails to operate, lock the doors individually using the key in the position shown.*



Autounlock

Autounlock unlocks all the doors when all of the following occur:

Doors and Locks

- The ignition is on, all the doors are closed, and your vehicle has been moving at a speed greater than 20 km/h.
- Your vehicle comes to a stop and you switch the ignition off or to the accessory position.
- You open the driver door within 10 minutes of switching the ignition off or to accessory.

Note: *If you electronically lock your vehicle after you switch the ignition off with the driver door closed, the doors will not autounlock.*

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 62).

Slam Lock Protect

This feature helps to prevent you from locking your key inside your vehicle's passenger compartment.

When you electronically lock your vehicle with any side door open, the vehicle will automatically unlock all doors.

Illuminated Entry

The interior lamps and some exterior lamps illuminate when you unlock the doors with the remote control. The illuminated entry system will turn off the lights if:

- The ignition is on.
- You press the remote control lock button.

After 25 seconds of illumination. The lights will not turn off if:

- You turn them on with the lamp control.
- Any door is open. In this case, more of the interior lighting will illuminate and the timer will reset.

Illuminated Exit

The interior lamps illuminate when all doors are closed and you switch the ignition off. The lamps will turn off if all the doors remain closed and:

- 25 seconds have elapsed.
- You switch ignition to RUN.

When any door is opened, the exterior lamps will illuminate and remain on for 25 seconds, along with the interior. Whenever a door is opened or closed, the timer will reset.

KEYLESS ENTRY (If Equipped)

General Information

Note: *The system may not function if the key is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.*

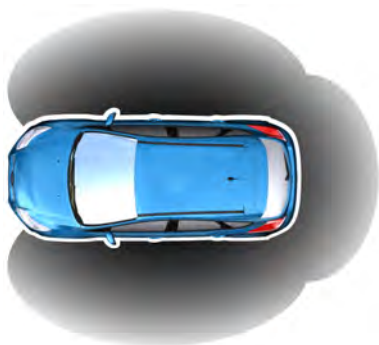
The system will not function if:

- Your vehicle battery has no charge.
- The passive key frequencies are jammed.
- The passive key battery is flat.

Note: *If the system does not function, you will need to use the key blade to lock and unlock your vehicle.*

The system allows you to operate your vehicle without the use of a key or remote control.

Doors and Locks



E78276

Locking and unlocking requires a valid intelligent access key to be located within one of the three external detection ranges. These are located approximately 1 m from the front door handles and from the swing gate handle. You can also use the Intelligent Access key as a remote control. See **Locking and Unlocking** (page 34).

Locking Using Intelligent Access



E248554

Touch the outer door handle lock sensor for approximately one second to lock, being careful to not touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle at the same time. After locking, you can immediately pull on the door handle to confirm locking occurred without inadvertently unlocking.

Note: *Your vehicle does not lock itself automatically. If you do not lock, your vehicle will remain unlocked.*

Note: *Locking touch surfaces are located on each of the front doors.*

For central locking and to arm the alarm:

- Touch the locking surface once.

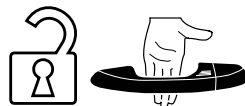
After locking the doors with the lock sensor, there is a brief delay before you can unlock your vehicle.

This delay lets you pull the handle to make sure your vehicle is locked.

Note: *When the delay period is over, you can open the doors again, provided the Intelligent Access is within the respective detection range.*

Two short flashes of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and swing gate have been locked and that the alarm (if equipped) has been armed.

Unlocking Using Intelligent Access



E248553

Note: *Your vehicle remains locked for longer than three days, the system will enter an energy-saving mode. This is to reduce the discharge of your vehicle battery. When your vehicle is unlocked while in this mode, the reaction time of the system may be a little longer than normal. To exit the energy-saving mode, unlock your vehicle.*

With your intelligent access key within 1 m of your vehicle, touch the unlock sensor on the back of the door handle for a brief period and then pull on the door handle to unlock, being careful to not touch the lock sensor at the same time or pulling the door handle too quickly. The intelligent access system requires a brief delay to authenticate your intelligent access key fob.

Note: *Keep the door handle clean to make sure the system operates correctly.*

Doors and Locks

Note: A valid passive key must be located within the detection range of that door.

One long flash of the direction indicators confirms that all the doors and swing gate have been unlocked and that the alarm (if equipped) has been disarmed.

Unlocking only Driver Door

If the unlocking function is reprogrammed so that only the driver door is unlocked See **Remote Control** (page 26). Note the following:

If the driver door is the first door which is unlocked, the other doors and swing gate will remain locked. All the other doors can be unlocked from inside your vehicle by pressing the unlock button located at the front part of the front inner handles. Doors can be unlocked individually by pulling the interior door handles on those doors.

If the front passenger door is the first door which is unlocked, all the doors will be unlocked.

Disabled Keys

Any keys left inside your vehicle interior when it is locked will be disabled.

You cannot use a disabled key to switch the ignition on or start the engine.

You must enable all Intelligent Access again in order to use them.

To enable all your Intelligent Access, unlock your vehicle using a passive key or the remote control unlocking function.

All Intelligent Access will then be enabled if you switch the ignition on or your vehicle is started using a valid key.

Intelligent Access - Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key Blade (If Equipped)



E256649

1. Push the release button and pull the key blade out.
2. Remove the key blade and insert it into the lock.

Note: Only the driver door handle has a lock cylinder.

TAILGATE


WARNINGS




It is extremely dangerous to ride in a cargo area, inside or outside of a vehicle. In a crash, people riding in these areas are more likely to be seriously injured or killed. Do not allow people to ride in any area of your vehicle that is not equipped with seats and seatbelts. Make sure everyone in your vehicle is in a seat and properly using a seatbelt. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.

Doors and Locks

WARNINGS

 Make sure that you fully close the tailgate to prevent exhaust fumes from entering your vehicle. If you are unable to fully close the tailgate, open the air vents or the windows to allow fresh air to enter your vehicle. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

 Make sure that you fully close the tailgate to prevent passengers and cargo from falling out. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death.

Opening the Tailgate



E213377

A Tailgate release button.

Note: Vehicle without Keyless, you must unlock your vehicle in order to open the tailgate.

Note: Vehicle with Keyless you can unlock your vehicle in order to open the tailgate or if a passive key is within 1 m of the tailgate, the tailgate unlocks when you press the tailgate release button even if the vehicle is locked.

Note: For vehicles with a spare wheel, when you unlatch the tailgate and pull the exterior handle, the mechanism fully opens the tailgate. When closing, the mechanism slowly closes the tailgate.

Press the release button located on the tailgate right-hand tail lamp.

Closing the Tailgate

If you had unlocked your vehicle prior to opening the tailgate, it will remain unlocked when you close the tailgate. If the vehicle was locked and you opened the tailgate by approaching the vehicle with the passive key, when the tailgate is closed the vehicle will remain locked.

PASSIVE ANTI-THEFT SYSTEM

Principle of Operation

The system prevents someone from starting the engine with an incorrectly coded key.

Coded Keys

If you lose a key, you can purchase a replacement from an authorized dealer. You can also obtain extra keys from an authorized dealer.

Note: *Have all of your remaining keys erased and recoded if you lose a key. Have replacement keys coded together with recoding your remaining keys. See an authorized dealer for further information.*

Note: *Do not shield your keys with metal objects. This may prevent the receiver from recognizing a coded key.*

Arming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition off the engine immobilizer will arm automatically after a short time.

Disarming the Engine Immobilizer

When you switch the ignition on the engine immobilizer will disarm automatically if a correctly coded key is used.

If you are unable to start the engine with a correctly coded key, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

Steering Wheel

ADJUSTING THE STEERING WHEEL

WARNING



Do not adjust the steering wheel when your vehicle is moving.

Note: Make sure that you are sitting in the correct position. See **Sitting in the Correct Position** (page 81).



E95178

1. Unlock the steering column.
2. Adjust the steering wheel to the desired position.



E95179

3. Lock the steering column.

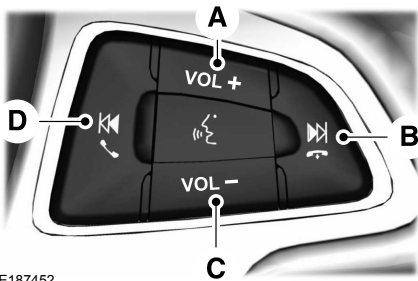
AUDIO CONTROL

Select the required source on the audio unit.

You can operate the following functions with the control:

Steering Wheel

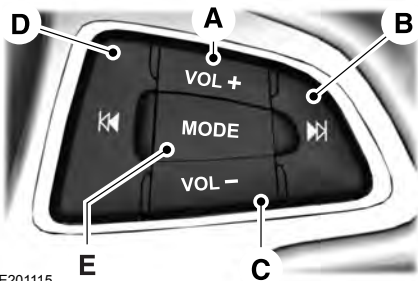
Type One



E187452

- A Volume up.
- B Seek up or next.
- C Volume down.
- D Seek down or previous.

Type Two



E201115

- A Volume up.
- B Seek up or next.
- C Volume down.

- D Seek down or previous.
- E Press to select source.

Seek, Next or Previous

Press the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next or previous stored preset.
- Play the next or the previous track.

Press and hold the seek button to:

- Tune the radio to the next station up or down the frequency band.
- Seek through a track.

VOICE CONTROL



E186744

Press the button to select or deselect voice control. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 209).

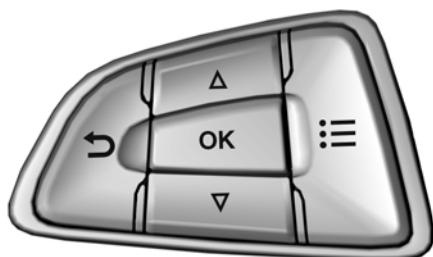
Steering Wheel

CRUISE CONTROL



E245912

INFORMATION DISPLAY CONTROL

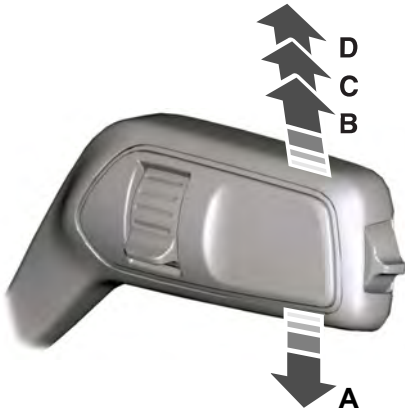


E246679

See **General Information** (page 62).

Wipers and Washers

WINDSHIELD WIPERS



E248785

- A Single wipe.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Normal wipe.
- D High-speed wipe.

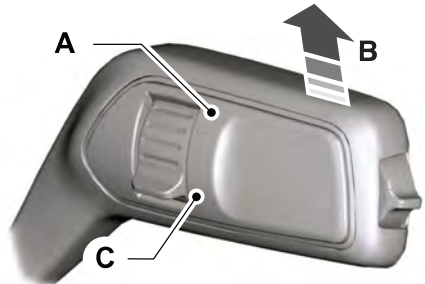
Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. See **Checking the Wiper Blades** (page 152). If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 153).

Note: Do not operate the wipers on a dry windshield. This may scratch the glass or damage the wiper blades. Always use the windshield washers before wiping a dry windshield.

Intermittent Wipe



E242320

- A Short wipe interval.
- B Intermittent wipe.
- C Long wipe interval.

Use the rotary control to adjust the intermittent wipe interval.

Speed Dependent Wipers (If Equipped)

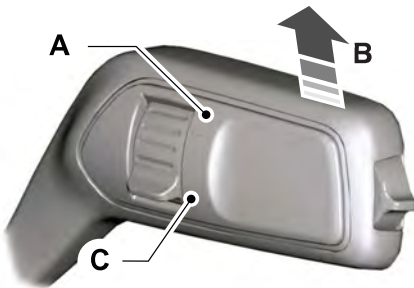
When your vehicle speed increases, the interval between wipes decreases.

AUTOWIPERS (If Equipped)

Autowipers uses a rain sensor in the area around the interior mirror. The wipers operate when the rain sensor detects water on the windshield in front of it. The rain sensor continues to monitor the amount of water and adjusts the speed of the wipers.

You can switch autowipers off in the information display. See **Autowipers** (page 44). If you switch autowipers off, the windshield wipers operate in intermittent mode.

Wipers and Washers



E242320

- A High sensitivity.
- B Autowipers on.
- C Low sensitivity.

Move the wiper lever upward to the first position to switch autowipers on.

Use the rotary control to adjust the sensitivity of the autowipers. When you select low sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a large amount of water on the windshield. When you select high sensitivity, the wipers operate when the sensor detects a small amount of water on the windshield.

Note: Keep the outside of the windshield clean. The rain sensor is very sensitive and the wipers may operate if dirt, mist or insects hit the windshield.

If you leave autowipers on, it may not operate when you switch the ignition on during freezing temperatures. This is because the system has deactivated the rain sensor to prevent damage to the windshield wipers. Defrost the windshield before reactivating the rain sensor. You can reactivate the rain sensor by moving the rotary control or switching autowipers off and on.

Note: Fully defrost the windshield before you switch the windshield wipers on.

Note: Make sure that you switch the windshield wipers off before entering a car wash.

Wet or winter weather conditions could cause unexpected wiping or smearing.

To keep the windshield clear:

- Lower the sensitivity of the autowipers to reduce the amount of smearing on the windshield.
- Switch autowipers off.

Note: If streaks or smears appear on the windshield, clean the windshield and the wiper blades. If that does not resolve the issue, install new wiper blades. See **Changing the Wiper Blades** (page 153).

WINDSHIELD WASHERS



E242323

Pull the lever toward you to operate the windshield washers. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time. A courtesy wipe occurs a short time after the wipers stop to clear any remaining washer fluid.

Note: You can switch courtesy wipe off in the information display. See **Windshield Washers** (page 45).

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

Wipers and Washers

REAR WINDOW WIPER AND WASHERS

Rear Window Wiper



E242324

- A Intermittent wipe.
- B Continuous wipe.
- C Rear window wiper off.

If you shift to reverse (R) when the windshield wipers are on, the rear window wiper turns on.

You can switch reverse wipe off in the information display.

Note: Make sure you switch the rear window wiper off before entering a car wash.

Rear Window Washer



E242432

Push the lever away from you to operate the rear window washer. When you release the lever, the wipers operate for a short time.

Note: Do not operate the washers when the washer reservoir is empty. This may cause the washer pump to overheat.

Lighting

GENERAL INFORMATION

Condensation in the Exterior Front Lamps and Rear Lamps

Exterior front lamps and rear lamps have vents to accommodate normal changes in air pressure.

Condensation can be a natural by-product of this design. When moist air enters the lamp assembly through the vents, there is a possibility that condensation can occur when the temperature is cold. When normal condensation occurs, a fine mist can form on the interior of the lens. The fine mist eventually clears and exits through the vents during normal operation.

Clearing time may take as long as 48 hours under dry weather conditions.

Examples of acceptable condensation are:

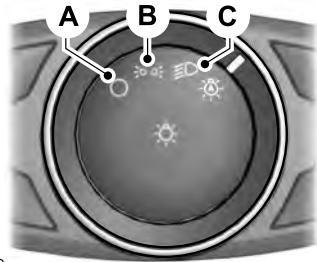
- The presence of a fine mist (no streaks, drip marks or large droplets).
- A fine mist covers less than 50% of the lens.

Examples of unacceptable condensation are:

- A water puddle inside the lamp.
- Streaks, drip marks or large droplets present on the interior of the lens.

If you see any unacceptable condensation, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.

LIGHTING CONTROL



E142449

- A Off.
- B Parking lamps, instrument panel lamps, license plate lamps and tail lamps.
- C Headlamps.

Note: Prolonged use of the parking lamps causes the battery to run out of charge.

Note: Parking lamps may turn off automatically. This prevents the vehicle battery from running out of charge.

Parking Lamps

Switch the ignition off.

Both Sides

Select position B on the lighting control to switch the parking lamps on.

Lighting

High Beams



E242674

Push the lever forward to switch the high beams on.

Push the lever forward again or pull the lever toward you to switch the high beams off.

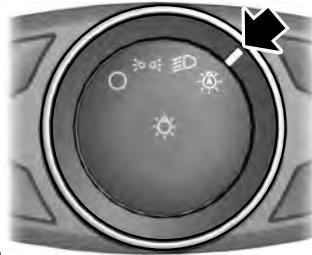
Headlamp Flasher



E242675


Pull the lever toward you slightly and release it to flash the headlamps.

AUTOLAMPS



E142451

WARNING

 The system does not relieve you of your responsibility to drive with due care and attention. You may need to override the system if it does not turn the headlamps on in low visibility conditions, for example daytime fog.

When the lighting control is in the autolamps position, the headlamps automatically turn on in low light situations or when the wipers activate.

If equipped, the following also activate when the lighting control is in the autolamps position and you switch them on in the information display:

- Configurable daytime running lamps.

Note: *If you have autolamps switched on you can only switch the high beam headlamps on once the system has turned the headlamps on.*

Lighting

Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps (If Equipped)

When the headlamp switch is in the Autolamps position, the windshield wiper activated exterior lamps will turn on within 10 seconds when you switch the windshield wipers on. They turn off approximately 60 seconds after you switch the windshield wipers off.

This feature does not turn on the exterior lamps:

- During a single wipe.
- While the wipers are on to clear washer fluid during a wash condition.
- If the wipers are in automatic or intermittent modes.

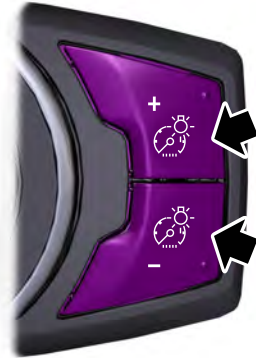
Note: *If you have autolamps and autowipers switched on the low beam headlamps will turn on automatically when the windshield wipers operate continuously.*

Autolamps Delay (If Equipped)

When the Autolamps have the headlamps and position/parklamps turned on, and the ignition is turned OFF, the headlamps and position/parklamps will remain on for an additional 20 seconds (the autolamp exit delay) or until the Autolamps are disabled.

You can change the delay period in the information display. See **Information Displays** (page 62).

INSTRUMENT LIGHTING DIMMER



E132712

Press it repeatedly or press it and hold it until the desired level is reached.

Note: *If you disconnect the battery or it loses charge the instrument lighting will return to its brightest setting.*

HEADLAMP EXIT DELAY

After you switch the ignition off, you can switch the headlamps on by pulling the direction indicator lever toward you. You will hear a short tone. The headlamps will switch off automatically after three minutes with any door open or 30 seconds after the last door has been closed. You can cancel this feature by pulling the direction indicator toward you again or switching the ignition on.

Lighting

DAYTIME RUNNING LAMPS

WARNING



The autolamps switch position may not activate the headlamps in all low visibility conditions, such as daytime fog. Always ensure that your headlamps are switched to auto or on, as appropriate, during all low visibility conditions. Failure to do so may result in a crash.

To switch the system on:

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Switch the lighting control to the off or autolamp position.

FRONT FOG LAMPS (If Equipped)



E210814

Press the control to switch the fog lamps on or off.

You can switch the fog lamps on when the lighting control is in any position except off.

Note: Only use fog lamps during reduced visibility, for example, fog, snow or heavy rain.

Note: If you switch autolamps on, you can only switch the fog lamps on once autolamps has turned the headlamps on.

HEADLAMP LEVELING

Adjust the level of the headlamp beams according to your vehicle load.

Set the headlamp leveling control to zero when your vehicle is unloaded. Set the headlamp beams to give between 35–100 m of road surface illumination when your vehicle is partially or fully loaded.

To adjust the level of the headlamp beams:



E132711

1. Press to release the control.
2. Rotate the control to the required setting.
3. Press to close the control.

Lighting

DIRECTION INDICATORS



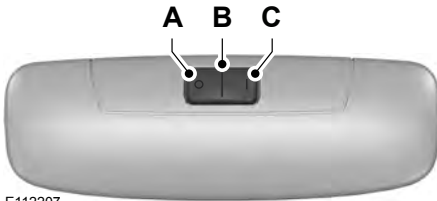
E242676

Push the lever up or down to use the direction indicators.

Note: Tap the lever up or down to make the direction indicators flash three times to indicate a lane change.

INTERIOR LAMPS

Courtesy lamp



E112207

- A Off
- B Door contact
- C On

If you set the switch to position **B**, the courtesy lamp will come on when you unlock or open a door or the luggage compartment lid. If you leave a door open with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will go off automatically after some time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

The courtesy lamp will also come on when you switch off the ignition. It will go off automatically after a short time or when you start or restart the engine.

If you set the switch to position **C** with the ignition switch off, the courtesy lamp will come on. It will go off automatically after a short time to prevent the vehicle battery from discharging. To switch it back on, switch on the ignition for a short time.

Reading lamps



E112208

Press the buttons to switch the reading lamps on and off.

Lighting

Vanity lamp (If Equipped)



E170527

Position the visor downward. Press the button to switch the vanity lamp on and off.

Windows and Mirrors

POWER WINDOWS

Opening and Closing the Windows

WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the power windows. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.



When closing the power windows, verify they are free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the window openings.



Press the control to open the window. Lift the control to close the window.

Note: *The power windows operate with the ignition on, and for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open a front door.*

Note: *If the power window is operated many times on a short period the switch may be inactivated for some moment to avoid overheat on power window system.*



E269406

Note: *You may hear a pulsing noise when just one of the windows is open. Lower the opposite window slightly to reduce this noise.*

One-Touch Open

Fully press the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window. To stop it during one-touch operation, press again the switch or lift it.

One-Touch Close

Fully lift the control and release it. Press again or lift it to stop the window. To stop it during one-touch operation, press again the switch or lift it.

Rear Window Lock



Press the control to lock or unlock the rear window controls. It illuminates when you lock the rear window controls.

Overriding Bounce-Back

WARNING



If you override bounce-back, the window does not reverse if it detects an obstacle. Take care when closing the windows to avoid personal injury or damage to your vehicle.

1. Close the window until it reaches the point of resistance and let it reverse.
2. Lift the control within few seconds to override bounce-back and close the window. Bounce-back is now disabled and you can close the window manually.

Note: *The window goes past the point of resistance and you can fully close it.*

Note: *If the window does not close, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.*

Enabling One-Touch up

Lift and hold the window switch until the windows is fully closed, hold it for a few seconds. Release the switch and the window will be learnt.

Windows and Mirrors

Power-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)



E258124

To fold both mirrors, make sure you switch your vehicle on (with the ignition in accessory mode or the engine running) and then:

1. Press the control to fold the mirrors.
2. Press the control again to unfold.

Auto-Folding Mirrors (If Equipped)

Note: *The auto-fold mirrors operate only if they are in an unfolded position. If you folded the mirrors using the power-folding control, then you must unfold the mirrors using the power-folding control so the auto-fold feature can work.*

The mirrors fold automatically when you lock the vehicle. The mirrors unfold when you unlock the vehicle. You can switch this feature on or off using the vehicle settings menu in the information display.

Loose Mirror (If Equipped)

If your power-folding mirrors are manually folded, they may not work properly even after you re-position them. You need to reset them if they:

- Vibrate while driving or feel loose.
- Do not stay in the folded or unfolded position.

To reset the power-fold feature:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the mirrors are manually folded.

Even though the power-folding mirrors typically operate electronically, you can still fold and unfold them manually. After any manual adjustment, however, the power-folding mirrors become unsynchronized, even after repositioning them.

An unsynchronized mirror may:

- Not fold or unfold normally.
- Not stay in its set position.
- Feel loose or even vibrate at normal driving speeds.

You can reset the mirrors by doing the following:

1. Use the power-folding mirror control to fold and unfold the mirrors.
2. When you hear one or both of the mirrors make a loud noise, it means that you reset the mirrors successfully. This noise is normal.
3. Repeat this process each time the power-folding mirrors fold or unfold manually.

Accessory Delay

You can use the window switches for several minutes after you switch the ignition off or until you open either front door.

Windows and Mirrors

EXTERIOR MIRRORS

Power Exterior Mirrors (If Equipped)

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



E259892

- A Left-hand mirror.
- B Adjustment control.
- C Right-hand mirror.

To adjust a mirror:

1. Press A or C to select the mirror you want to adjust. The control lights turn on.
2. Press B to adjust the mirror's position.
3. Press the mirror control again. The light turns off.

INTERIOR MIRROR

WARNING



Do not adjust the mirrors when your vehicle is moving. This could result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.

Note: Do not clean the housing or glass of any mirror with harsh abrasives, fuel or other petroleum or ammonia-based cleaning products.

You can adjust the interior mirror to your preference. Some mirrors also have a second pivot point. This lets you move the mirror head up or down and from side to side.

Pull the tab below the mirror toward you to reduce glare at night.

Auto-Dimming Mirror (If Equipped)

Note: Do not block the sensors on the front and back of the mirror. Mirror performance may be affected. A rear center passenger or raised rear center head restraint may also block light from reaching the sensor.

The mirror will dim automatically to reduce glare when bright lights are detected from behind your vehicle. It will automatically return to normal reflection when you select reverse gear to make sure you have a clear view when backing up.

MOONROOF (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Do not leave children unattended in your vehicle and do not let them play with the moonroof. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Windows and Mirrors

WARNINGS



When closing the moonroof, verify that it is free of obstruction and make sure that children and pets are not in the proximity of the roof opening.

The sunscreen can be manually opened or closed when the glass panel is closed.

The moonroof control is located on the overhead console.

The moonroof has a one-touch open and close feature. To stop it during one-touch operation, press the control a second time.

Opening and Closing the Moonroof



E147756

Press and release the rear of the control to open the moonroof.

Press and release the front of the control to close the moonroof.

Venting the Moonroof

With moonroof closed, press and release the front of the switch to vent the moonroof. Press and release the rear of the switch to close the moonroof.

In case moonroof functional does not work properly, follow this relearning procedure:

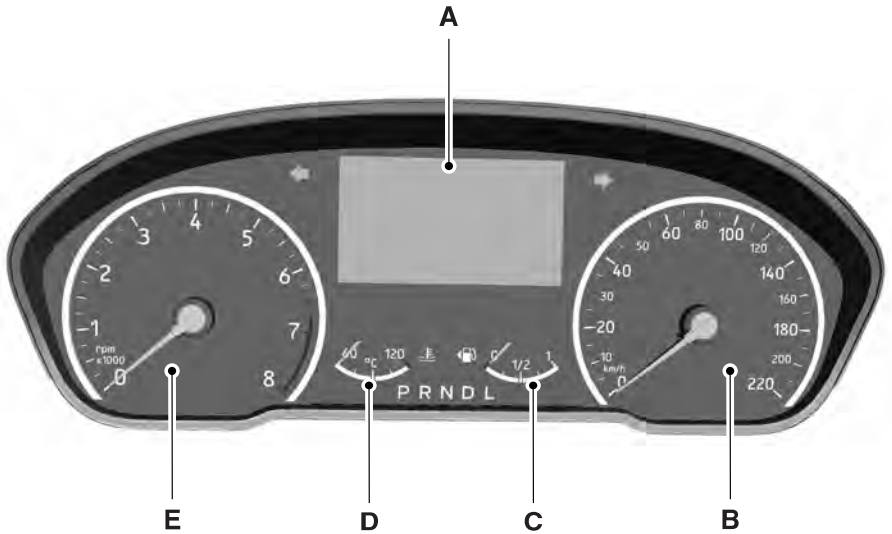
1. Press the button to fully close the moonroof. Release and press button to close the moonroof again until it moves to full vent position.
2. In full vent position, press and hold the moonroof close button for approximately fifteen seconds, until the moonroof moves.
3. Quickly release the moonroof close button, re-press and hold for approximately three seconds until the moonroof moves to fully closed, fully open and back to fully closed.

Confirm the relearning was successful by opening and closing the moonroof.

The moonroof switch has a two stage operation, half press and full press. All relearning procedure must be done with half press operation.

Instrument Cluster

GAUGES



E246157

- A Information display.
- B Speedometer.
- C Fuel gauge.
- D Engine coolant temperature gauge.
- E Tachometer.

Information Display

Odometer

Records the total distance traveled by your vehicle.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Computer

See **Trip Computer** (page 65).

Vehicle Settings and Personalization

See **General Information** (page 62).

Instrument Cluster

Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge

WARNING



Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling

system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

At normal operating temperature the indicator will remain in the center section.

Note: Do not restart the engine until the cause of overheating has been determined and resolved.

If the needle enters the red section, the engine is overheating. Stop the engine, switch the ignition off and determine the cause once the engine has cooled down. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 149).

Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge indicates approximately how much fuel is in the fuel tank.

The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.



A



B

E236403

- A The fuel filler door is on the left-hand side of your vehicle.
- B The fuel filler door is on the right-hand side of your vehicle.

WARNING LAMPS AND INDICATORS

The following warning lamps and indicators alert you to a vehicle condition that may become serious. Some lamps illuminate when you start your vehicle to make sure they work. If any lamps remain on after starting your vehicle, refer to the respective system warning lamp for further information.

Note: Some warning indicators appear in the information display and operate the same as a warning lamp but do not illuminate when you start your vehicle.

Airbag Warning Lamp



If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, continues to flash or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Instrument Cluster

Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, this indicates a malfunction. Your vehicle continues to have normal braking without the anti-lock brake system function. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Brake System Warning Lamp

WARNING



Driving extended distances with the parking brake engaged can cause brake failure and the risk of personal injury.



It illuminates when you engage the parking brake and the ignition is on.

If it illuminates when your vehicle is moving, make sure the parking brake is disengaged. If the parking brake is disengaged, this indicates low brake fluid level or a brake system fault. Have your vehicle checked immediately.

Direction Indicator



Flashes during operation. An increase in the rate of flashing warns of a failed indicator bulb.

Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp



It illuminates and a chime sounds until you fasten the seatbelts.

Front Fog Lamp Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the front fog lamps on.

Glow Plug Indicator



If it illuminates, wait until it turns off before starting.

Headlamp High Beam Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp high beam on.

Ignition Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. Switch off all unnecessary electrical equipment. If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Lamps on Indicator



It illuminates when you switch the headlamp low beam or the side and rear lamps on.

Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp



If it illuminates when you are driving, refuel as soon as possible.

Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp (Diesel) (If Equipped)



It will illuminate when there is excess water in the fuel filter. Drain off the water immediately.

See **Fuel Quality** (page 96).

Instrument Cluster

Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp

(If Equipped)



It illuminates if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct tire pressure.

Malfunction Indicator Lamp



The MIL illuminates when the ignition is initially turned on. The indicator must be off so that the engine starts operating, indicating that the system is operational. If the indicator stays illuminated while engine is running, see a Ford Distributor to correct the problem.

Powertrain Malfunction



If it illuminates when driving, a powertrain fault has been detected. Contact your authorized dealer as soon possible.

Oil Pressure Warning Lamp



It illuminates when you switch the ignition on.

If it illuminates when the engine is running this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the engine oil level. If the oil level is sufficient, this indicates a system malfunction. Have your vehicle checked immediately. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 148).

Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp

WARNING



If it illuminates when you are driving do not continue your journey, even if the oil level is correct. Have your vehicle checked.



If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level.

If it stays on after starting or illuminates when driving, this indicates a malfunction. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch the engine off. Check the coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 149).

Rear Fog Lamp Indicator (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the rear fog lamps on.

Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp (If Equipped)



It illuminates when you switch the system off.

Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator (If Equipped)



Flashes during operation.

If it does not illuminate when you switch the ignition on, or remains on when the engine is running, this indicates a malfunction. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: *The system automatically turns off if there is a malfunction.*

See **Using Traction Control** (page 109).
See **Using Stability Control** (page 110).

Door Ajar Warning Lamp



Illuminates when you switch the ignition on and remains on if any door, the hood or the liftgate is not closed properly.

Instrument Cluster

AUDIBLE WARNINGS AND INDICATORS

Automatic Transmission

Sounds when you open the driver's door and do not move the transmission selector lever to position **P**.

Key Outside Car

Vehicles With Keyless System

Sounds when you close the door, the engine is running and the system does not detect a passive key inside your vehicle.

Headlamps On

Sounds when you remove the key from the ignition and open the driver's door and you have left the headlamps or parking lamps on.

Fuel Gauge

Switch the ignition on. The fuel gauge will indicate approximately how much fuel is left in the fuel tank. The fuel gauge may vary slightly when your vehicle is moving or on a gradient. The arrow adjacent to the fuel pump symbol indicates on which side of your vehicle the fuel filler door is located.

Low Fuel Reminder

A low fuel reminder displays and sounds when the distance to empty is 80 km or less.

Note: *The low fuel reminder can appear at different fuel gauge positions depending on fuel economy conditions. This variation is normal.*

Seatbelt Reminder

WARNING



Do not sit on top of a fastened seatbelt to prevent the seatbelt reminder from coming on. The occupant protection system will only provide optimum protection when you use the seatbelt properly.

Note: *The seatbelt reminder remains in stand-by mode when the front seatbelts have been fastened. It sounds if either seatbelt is unfastened.*

Sounds when your vehicle speed exceeds the pre-determined limit and the front seatbelts are unfastened. The chime will stop after a period of time.

Information Displays

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING

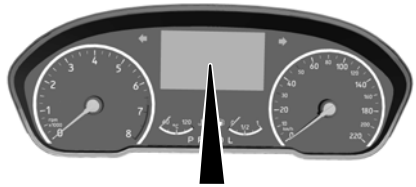


Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

You can control various systems on your vehicle using the information display controls on the steering wheel.

The information display shows the corresponding information.

Information Display Controls



E246680

- Press the up and down arrow buttons to scroll through and highlight the options within a menu.
- Press the right button to enter a submenu.
- Press the left button to exit a submenu.
- Press the **OK** button to choose and confirm settings or messages.

Menu Structure - Information Display

You can access the menu using the information display control.

Note: *It may describe options not fitted to the vehicle you have purchased.*

Trip computer 1 and 2	
Trip 1	
Trip 2	
Reset Individual Values	Reset All Reset Trip Odometer Reset Trip Timer

Information Displays

Trip computer 1 and 2	
Configure View	Reset Average Fuel
	Reset Average Speed
	Set to Default
	Trip Odometer
	Trip Timer
	Average Fuel
	Average Speed
	Distance to Empty
Instantaneous Fuel	

MyView
Digital Speedometer
Speedo/Instant. Fuel
Trip/Audio
Calm Screen

Navigation
Home
Previous Destinations
Favorite Destinations
POI Nearby

Phone
All Calls
Incoming Calls
Outgoing Calls
Missed Calls

Information Displays

Settings				
Information	Intelligent 4WD			
	MyKey Info			
	Tire Pressure			
	Auto Start/Stop			
Display	Language			
	Distance Unit	L/100 km		
		km/L		
		Miles / Gallons		
	Temperature Unit	Celsius (°C)		
		Fahrenheit (°F)		
	Tire Pressure	psi		
		kPa		
bar				
Driver Assistance	Rear Parking Aid			
Vehicle Settings	Chimes	Information		
	Lighting	Autolamp Delay	Off	
			10 Seconds	
			20 Seconds	
			120 Seconds	
	Daytime Running Lights			
	Locks	Autolock		
		Autounlock		
		Mislock		
		Remote Unlock		
Switches Inhibit				
Windows	Remote Open			

Information Displays

Settings		
	Wipers	Remote Close
		Courtesy Wipe
		Rain Sensing
		Reverse Wiper
MyKey	MyKey Info	
	Create MyKey	

TRIP COMPUTER

Resetting the Trip Computer

Press and hold **OK** on the current screen to reset the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

All Values

Indicates all the respective trip, distance, time and average fuel consumption information.

Average Fuel Consumption

Indicates the average fuel consumption since the function was last reset.

Instantaneous Fuel (If Equipped)

Indicates the current fuel consumption.

Distance to Empty

Indicates the approximate distance your vehicle will travel on the fuel remaining in the tank. Changes in driving pattern may cause the value to vary.

Outside Air Temperature

Shows the outside air temperature.

Trip Odometer

Registers the distance traveled of individual journeys.

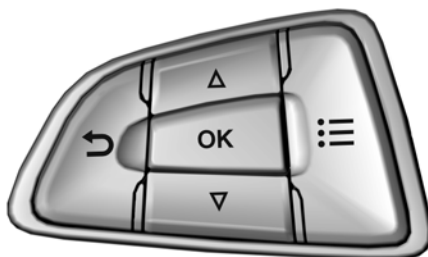
Trip Timer

Registers the elapsed time of individual journeys or the total time since the function was last reset.

INFORMATION MESSAGES

Note: Depending on your vehicle options and instrument cluster type, not all of the messages will display or be available.

Note: The information display may abbreviate or shorten certain messages.



E246679

Press the OK button to acknowledge and remove some messages from the information display.

Information Displays

The information display will automatically remove other messages after a short period of time.

You need to confirm certain messages before you can access the menus.

Accessory Power

Message	Action
Full Accessory Power Active	Displays if you switch the ignition on and do not start the engine.

Airbag

Message	Action
Airbag fault Service now	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.

Alarm

Message	Action
Alarm activated Check Vehicle	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry. See Passive Anti-Theft System (page 40).
Alarm fault Service required	Displays when the system requires service due to a malfunction. Contact an authorized dealer.
Vehicle Alarm To Stop Alarm, Start Vehicle.	Displays when the alarm has been triggered due to unauthorized entry.
Alarm Announcement	

Brake System

Message	Action
Check Brake System	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Battery and Charging System

Message	Action
Electrical system overvoltage Stop safely	Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so and switch off the ignition. Contact an authorized dealer.
Battery low See manual	Displays to warn of a low battery condition. Turn off all unneeded electrical accessories. Contact an authorized dealer.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System

Message	Action
Tire Pressure Low	Displays if the tire pressure in one or more tires is below the correct pressure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 174).
Tire Pressure Low Specified:	
Tire Pressure Monitor Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 174).
Tire Pressure Sensor Fault	Displays if the system detects a fault with a tire pressure sensor or the spare tire is in use. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System (page 174). If the warning message remains on after you have checked the tire pressures, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Engine

Message	Action
Engine fault Service now	Engine service is required. Contact an authorized dealer.
Power reduced to lower engine temperature	Displays when the engine has reduced power in order to help reduce high coolant temperature.
Engine Coolant Over Temperature	Displays when the engine temperature is too high. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow it to cool. If the problem persists, have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Fuel System

Message	Action
Fuel Level Low	Refuel as soon as possible.
Fuel Level Low Distance Metric:##0 Km To Empty	Refuel as soon as possible.
Fuel Level Low Distance Imperial:##0 Miles To Empty	
Fuel Pressure Low	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Water in Fuel Drain Filter	Displays if the system detects there is excess water in the fuel filter. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Hill Start Assist

Message	Action
Hill start assist not available	Displays when hill start assist is not available. Contact an authorized dealer. See Hill Start Assist (page 107).

Keyless Vehicle

Message	Action
No Key Detected	Displayed if the key is not detected by the system. See Push Button Ignition Switch (page 92).
Switch ignition off.	Displayed as a reminder to turn off the vehicle. See Push Button Ignition Switch (page 92).
To START Press Brake	Displayed as a reminder to press the brake while starting the vehicle.
Key Not Inside vehicle	Displayed when a valid key is not detected within the vehicle. See Push Button Ignition Switch (page 92).
Key Battery low Replace soon	Displays when the key battery is low. Change the battery as soon as possible. See Remote Control (page 26).

Information Displays

Lighting

Message	Action
Check Headlamp System See manual	Displays if an electrical malfunction occurs with the headlamp system. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Maintenance

Message	Action
Brake fluid level low Service now	Indicates the brake fluid level is low and the brake system should be inspected immediately. See Brake and Clutch Fluid Check (page 150).
Maintenance Set initial date	Indicates that the vehicle sold date has been successful updated. If this date has not been set, contact your authorized dealer.
Maintenance Set date	Displays when the date and time are not set.
Service Done	Displays when the service interval has been reset.
Maintenance Reminder Set To Off	Displays when the date and time is not set. If the date and time are set and the message remains, contact an authorized dealer.
Service Required	Indicates that your vehicle has reached the estimated time or distance for the scheduled maintenance. Contact an authorized dealer.

MyKey

Message	Action
Create MyKey	Displays when you are programming a MyKey.
Hold OK to Create MyKey	Displays when you are programming a MyKey.
Key is Already a MyKey	Displays when trying to create a MyKey with a key already designated as a MyKey.
Place Key in Backup Location	Displays when you are programming a MyKey and the key is not correctly positioned in the backup slot.
MyKey not Created	Displays if the system fails to create a MyKey.

Information Displays

Message	Action
MyKey Active Drive Safely	Displays when MyKey is active.
Check Speed Drive Safely	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
Speed Limited to avg speed metric:##0 km/h	Displays when starting your vehicle, a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is on.
Speed Limited to avg speed imperial:##0 MPH	
Near Vehicle Top Speed	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the vehicle speed approaches a preset speed limit.
Vehicle at Top Speed of MyKey Setting	Displays when a MyKey is in use and the MyKey speed limit is reached.
Buckle Up to Unmute Audio	Displays when a MyKey is in use and seatbelt reminder is activated.
MyKey Park Aid Cannot be Deactivated	Displays when a MyKey is in use and you try to switch the parking aid system off.

Park Aid

Message	Action
Park Aid Fault	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Park Aid	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Check Front Park Aid	
Check Rear Park Aid	
Park Pilot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	Displays when the park pilot system sensors are blocked. See Parking Aids (page 111).
Front Park Pilot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	
Rear Park Pilot Not Available Sensor Blocked See Manual	

Information Displays

Park Brake

Message	Action
Park brake applied	Displays when the parking brake is set, the engine is running and the vehicle is driven more than 5 km/h. If the warning stays on after the parking brake is released, contact an authorized dealer.
Park Brake Not Applied	Displays as a reminder to apply the parking brake.
Park Brake Not Applied Apply Park Brake	
Brake Applied Power Reduced	Displays if you have not released the parking brake and the vehicle speed reaches 5 km/h. If the warning message remains on after you have released the parking brake, the system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Release Park Brake	
Park Brake Malfunction Service Now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Power Steering

Message	Action
Steering loss Stop safely	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering assist malfunction Service required	The power steering system is not working. Stop the vehicle in a safe place. Contact an authorized dealer.
Steering malfunction Service now	The power steering system has detected a condition within the power steering system or passive entry or passive start system requires service. Contact an authorized dealer.

Stability Control

Message	Action
SHIFT SYS FAULT Sport Unavailable Service Required	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Information Displays

Starting System

Message	Action
To START Press Brake	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake pedal.
To START Press Clutch	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the clutch pedal.
To START Press Brake and Clutch	Displays when you start your vehicle as a reminder to fully press the brake and clutch pedals.
Cranking Time Exceeded	Displays if your vehicle fails to start.
No Key Detected	Displays when the system cannot detect a valid key.
Starting System Fault	Displays if you are unable to start your vehicle with a correctly coded key. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Restart Now or Key is Needed	Displays for 20 seconds if you switch the engine off and the system cannot detect a valid passive key. After 10 seconds, you can no longer start your vehicle if it does not detect a valid passive key.

Traction Control

Message	Action
Traction Control On	Displays when the traction control system has been switched on.
Traction Control Off	Displays when the traction control system has been switched off.

Information Displays

Transmission

Message	Action
Transmission malfunction Service now	The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Service Required	
Transmission Overtemperature Stop Safely	The transmission is overheating and needs to cool. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, switch the engine off and allow the transmission to cool.
Transmission Overheating Stop Safely	
Transmission Too Hot Press Brake	
Transmission Limited Function See Manual	The transmission has limited functionality. The system has detected a fault that requires service. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.
Transmission Warming Up Please Wait	Displays at low ambient temperatures if it takes a few seconds for the transmission to engage a gear. Fully press the brake pedal until the message disappears from the information display.
Transmission Not in Park	Displays as a reminder to shift into park (P).
Press Brake to Unlock Gearshift Lever	Press the brake pedal to unlock the transmission.
Gearshift Lever Unlocked	Displays when the gearshift lever unlocks.

Vehicle Settings

Message	Action
Transport Mode Contact Dealer	Your vehicle is in transport mode. Some features on your vehicle are not available. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Climate Control

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Outside Air

Keep the air intakes in front of the windshield free from obstruction (such as snow or leaves) to allow the climate control system to function effectively.

Recirculated Air

The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. Outside air does not enter your vehicle.

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Heating

Heating performance depends on the temperature of the coolant.

General Information on Controlling the Interior Climate

Close the windows.

Warming the Interior

Direct the air toward your feet. In cold or humid weather conditions, direct some of the air toward the windshield and the door windows.

Cooling the Interior

Direct the air toward your face.

Air Conditioning

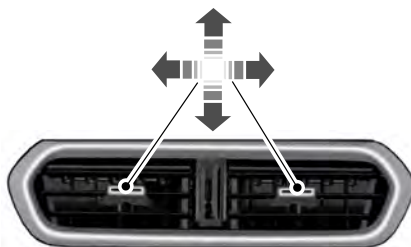
The system directs condensation to the outside of your vehicle, which could cause a small pool of water to form under your vehicle. This is normal.

Note: The air conditioning operates only when the temperature is above 4°C.

Note: When you use air conditioning, your vehicle uses more fuel.

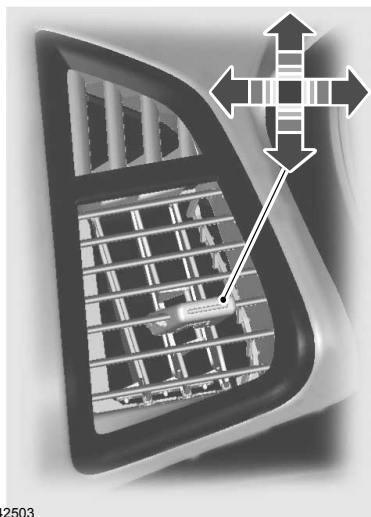
AIR VENTS

Center Air Vents



E242504

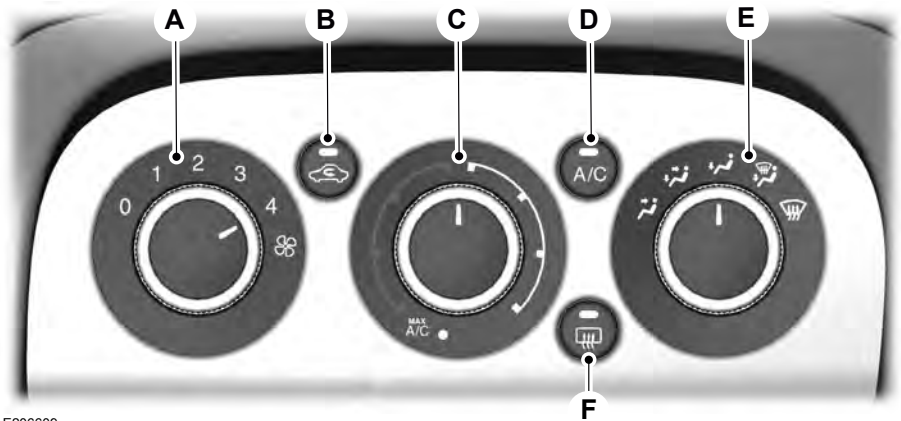
Side Air Vents



E242503

Climate Control

MANUAL CLIMATE CONTROL (If Equipped)



E206609

- A **Fan speed control:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired fan speed or switch off. If you switch the fan off, the windshield may fog up.
- B **Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. When you select recirculated air, the button illuminates and the air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- C **Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature. If you select **MAX A/C**, the recirculated air and **A/C** is automatically turned on and the temperature is set to minimum. If **A/C** or recirculated air are turned off, the **MAX A/C** function is automatically turned off.
- D **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. Air conditioning cools your vehicle. In hot days, to improve the performance of the air conditioning drive with the windows slightly open for the first two or three minutes.
- E **Air distribution control:** Adjust to select the desired air distribution.
- F **Heated rear window:** Turn the heated rear window on and off. See **Manual Climate Control** (page 75).

Climate Control



Select to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.



Select to distribute air through the instrument panel and footwell air vents.



Select to distribute air through the footwell air vents.



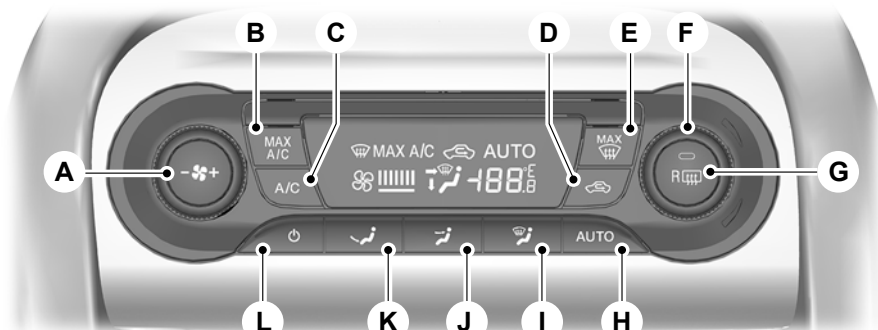
Select to distribute air through the windshield and footwell air vents.



Select to distribute air through the windshield air vents. You can also use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. You can also increase the temperature and fan speed to improve clearing.

Note: When defrost mode is selected, the AC will turn on automatically.

AUTOMATIC CLIMATE CONTROL (If Equipped)



E203686

- A **Fan speed:** Controls the volume of air circulated in your vehicle. Rotate the control to select the desired fan speed. The setting appears in the display.
- B **MAX A/C:** Press the button to distribute maximum air conditioning through the instrument panel air vents. This mode is more efficient than normal air conditioning.
- C **Air conditioning:** Press the button to switch the air conditioning on or off. In hot days, to improve air conditioning when starting your vehicle drive with the windows slightly open for two to three minutes. In certain condition (for example defrost), the AC compressor may continue to operate even though the AC is switched off.

Climate Control

- D Recirculated air:** Press the button to switch between outside air and recirculated air. The air currently in the passenger compartment recirculates. This can reduce the time needed to cool the interior and reduce unwanted odors from entering your vehicle.
- E MAX Defrost:** This mode quickly defogs the windshield. Press the button to distribute outside air through the windshield air vents. Air conditioning is automatically selected. The fan is set to the highest speed and the temperature to HI. Press the AUTO button to return to auto mode.
- F Temperature control:** Controls the temperature of the air circulated in your vehicle. Adjust to select the desired temperature. The setting appears in the display.
- Note:** The human body's comfortable temperature is between 21°C and 27°C, please set the temperature within a reasonable range.
- G Heated rear window:** Turns the heated rear window on and off. See **Automatic Climate Control** (page 76).
- H AUTO:** Press the button to select automatic operation. The system automatically controls the temperature, amount and distribution of the airflow to reach and maintain your previously selected temperature.
- I Defrost:** Press the button to distribute air to the windshield vents and de-mister. You can use this setting to defog and clear the windshield of a thin covering of ice. When defrost mode is switched on, the AC will turn on automatically.
- J Instrument panel:** Press the button to distribute air through the instrument panel air vents.
- K Footwell:** Press the button to distribute air through the footwell air vents.
- L On and off button:** Press the button to switch the system on and off.

HINTS ON CONTROLLING THE INTERIOR CLIMATE

General Hints

Note: Prolonged use of recirculated air may cause the windows to fog up.

Note: You may feel a small amount of air from the footwell air vents regardless of the air distribution setting.

Note: To reduce humidity build-up inside your vehicle, do not drive with the system switched off or with recirculated air always switched on.

Note: Do not place objects under the front seats as this may interfere with the airflow to the rear seats.

Note: Remove any snow, ice or leaves from the air intake area at the base of the windshield.

To minimize humidity in the air conditioning system and reduce unpleasant odors, switch off the air conditioning and keep the fan going for at least two minutes before switching off the engine. Do the following:

1. Keep the engine running.
2. Switch off the air conditioning by pressing the **A/C** button.

Climate Control

3. Keep the fan switched on.
4. Set the temperature to the full hot position.
5. Use outside air, not recirculated air.
6. Wait one to two minutes, and then switch off the engine.

Heating the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the highest setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell air vents position.	Press the footwell button to distribute air to the footwell air vents.

Recommended Settings for Heating

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the AUTO button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the hot settings.	Adjust the temperature control setting to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the footwell and windshield air vents position.	

Cooling the Interior Quickly

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the highest speed setting.	Press the AUTO button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Adjust the temperature control setting to low.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	

Climate Control

Recommended Settings for Cooling

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Adjust the fan speed to the second speed setting.	Press the AUTO button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the midway point of the cold settings.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	Open all instrument panel air vents and direct as desired.

Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods during Extreme High Ambient Temperatures

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Apply the parking brake.	Apply the parking brake.
2	Move the transmission selector lever to position P (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).	Move the transmission selector lever to position P (automatic transmission) or neutral (manual transmission).
3	Adjust the fan speed to the desired setting.	Press the AUTO button.
4	Adjust the temperature control to the MAX A/C position.	Adjust the temperature control setting to low.
5	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.	Adjust the air distribution control to the instrument panel air vents position.

Windshield and Side Window Defrosting or Defogging in Cold Weather

	Vehicle with manual climate control	Vehicle with automatic climate control
1	Press the windshield defrosting and defogging button.	Press the maximum windshield defrosting and defogging button.
2	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.	Adjust the temperature control to the desired setting.
3	Direct the outboard instrument panel air vents toward the side windows.	Direct the outboard instrument panel air vents toward the side windows.
4	Adjust the fan speed to the highest setting.	

Climate Control

HEATED WINDOWS (If Equipped)

Note: Make sure that the engine is running before switching the heated rear window on.

Heated Rear Window



Press the button to clear the heated rear window of thin ice and fog. Press the button to switch the system off. It switches off automatically after 10 minutes, or when you switch the ignition off.

Note: Do not use razor blades or other sharp objects to clean or remove decals from the inside of the heated rear window. The vehicle warranty does not cover damage caused to the heated rear window grid lines.

CABIN AIR FILTER

Your vehicle is equipped with a cabin air filter. It is located behind the center console.

The particulate filtration system reduces the concentration of airborne particles such as dust, spores and pollen in the air supplied to the interior of your vehicle.

Note: Make sure you have a cabin air filter installed at all times. This prevents foreign objects from entering the system. Running the system without a filter in place could result in degradation or damage to the system.

The particulate filtration system gives you and your passengers the following benefits:

- It improves your driving comfort by reducing particle concentration.
- It improves the interior compartment cleanliness.
- It protects the climate control components from particle deposits.

Replace the filter at regular intervals.

For additional cabin air filter information, or to replace the filter, see an authorized dealer.

Seats

SITTING IN THE CORRECT POSITION

WARNINGS



Do not recline the seatback too far as this can cause the occupant to slide under the seatbelt, resulting in serious injury in the event of a collision.



Do not place objects higher than the top of the seat backrest. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E249498

When you use them properly, the seat, head restraint, safety belt and airbags will provide optimum protection in the event of a crash.

We recommend that you follow these guidelines:

- Sit in an upright position with the base of your spine as far back as possible.
- Do not recline the seatback more than 30 degrees.

- Adjust the head restraint so that the top of it is level with the top of your head and as far forward as possible. Make sure that you remain comfortable.
- Keep sufficient distance between yourself and the steering wheel. We recommend a minimum of 25 cm between your breastbone and the airbag cover.
- Hold the steering wheel with your arms slightly bent.
- Bend your legs slightly so that you can press the pedals fully.
- Position the shoulder strap of the safety belt over the center of your shoulder and position the lap strap tightly across your hips.

Make sure that your driving position is comfortable and that you can maintain full control of your vehicle.

HEAD RESTRAINTS

WARNINGS



Raise the rear head restraints when passengers occupy the rear seats.



Do not remove the head restraint from an occupied seat.

Adjusting the Head Restraints

Raise the head restraint so that the top of the head restraint is at the same level of the top of your head. For tall occupants, adjust the head restraint to its full up position. To lower the head restraint, press and hold the locking button 1 and push the head restraint down.

Raising the Head Restraints

Pull the head restraint upward. Make sure the head restraint locks into place.

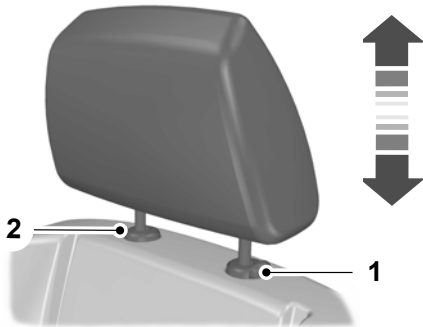
Seats

Lowering the Head Restraints

Press the locking button 1 and push the head restraint downward. Make sure the head restraint locks into place.

Removing the Head Restraints

Pull up on the head restraint until it reaches its highest adjustment position. Press and hold both the locking button 1 and locking button 2, then pull up on the head restraint.




E140447


Installing the Head Restraints

Align the stems with the guide sleeves and push the head restraint downward. Make sure the head restraint locks into place.


MANUAL SEATS


WARNINGS

 Do not adjust the driver seat or seat backrest when your vehicle is moving. This may result in sudden seat movement, causing the loss of control of your vehicle.

 Reclining the seatback can cause an occupant to slide under the seat's seatbelt, resulting in severe personal injuries in the event of a crash.

WARNINGS

 Do not place cargo or any objects behind the seat backrest before returning it to the original position. Pull on the seat backrest to make sure that it has fully latched after returning the seat backrest to its original position. An unlatched seat may become dangerous if you stop suddenly or have a crash.

 Make sure the seat fully locks into place by rocking it backward and forward. Not securing the seat into the locked position can be dangerous in a crash and could cause serious personal injury or death.

Moving the Seat Backward and Forward

Type 1



E253652

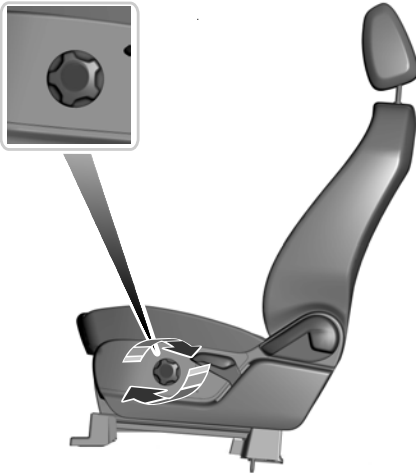
Seats

Type 2



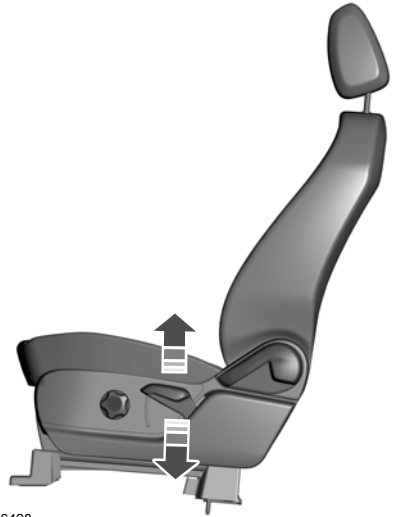
E260264

Adjusting the Lumbar Support (if Equipped)



E246429

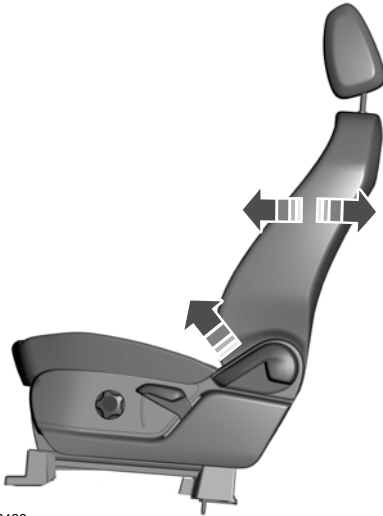
Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat (if Equipped)



E246428

Seats

Recline Adjustment



E246430

REAR SEATS

Flip and Fold Seat






E256718

With the seat unoccupied, lift the cushion and then fold down the seat back.

Lifting the Seat Cushion

WARNINGS

-  Do not use the bench seats as a bed when your vehicle is moving. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.
-  When folding or unfolding the seats, take care not to get your fingers caught between the seat backrest and seat frame. Failure to follow this warning could result in serious personal injury.
-  Do not place any objects on a folded seat. Hard objects may become projectiles in a crash or sudden stop, which may increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Seats



E256719

Insert your hand into the pull-strap on the cushion, lift upward on the cushion to flip it forward.

Lowering the Seat Cushion

WARNING



Make sure that the seat backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.

Note: When lowering the cushion, make sure no foreign objects are trapped underneath.

Lower the seat cushion to the full-down position.

Folding the Seatback Down

Type 1

Note: Do not attempt to fold the rear seat backrest forward before flipping the seat cushion up and out from underneath it.

Note: When folding the seatback, make sure no foreign objects are trapped underneath.

Note: Do not attempt to fold the rear seat backrest forward before lowering the head restraints. See **Head Restraints** (page 81).



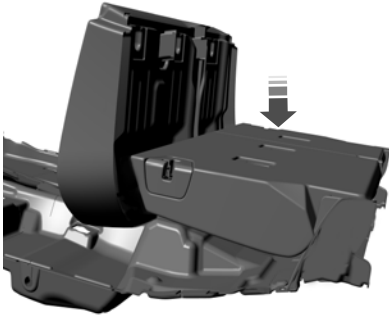
E256721

When the seatback is in the upright and locked position, depress the back-latch release button.



E256721

Seats



E256722

Fold the seatback forward until it rests on the head restraints.

Type 2



E260259

1. With the seat unoccupied, push the button shown on both the sides of the seat to fold the seatback flat.
2. Fold seat backrest forward.

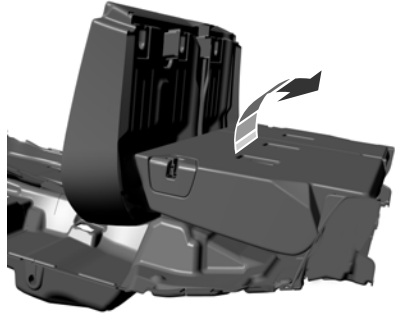
Folding the Seatback Upright

WARNING



When unfolding the seat, make sure that the seatbelts are not trapped behind the seat.

Note: Make sure that the seat cushion and backrests are secure and fully locked in their catches.



E256727

With the seat free of foreign objects, lift the seatback upright.

Seats



E256815

Secure the seatback in a fully upright and latched position, the latches will be secured to the side-pillar mounted strikers.

Rear Seat Armrest (if equipped)



E256814



E256723



E256728

Fold the armrest down to use the armrest.

Auxiliary Power Points

WARNINGS



Do not plug optional electrical accessories into the cigar lighter socket. Incorrect use of the cigar lighter can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.



Incorrect use of the power points can cause damage not covered by the vehicle warranty, and can result in fire or serious injury.

Note: You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 10 amps.

Note: Do not insert objects other than an accessory plug into the power point. This will damage the outlet and blow the fuse.

Note: Do not hang any type of accessory or accessory bracket from the plug.

Note: Do not use the power point for operating a cigar lighter element.

Note: Improper use of the power point can cause damage not covered by your warranty.

Note: Always keep the power point caps closed when not in use.

Run the engine for full capacity use of the power point.

To prevent the battery from being discharged:

- Do not use the power point longer than necessary when the engine is not running.
- It is strongly recommended that you always disconnect the accessories from the power point (12 volt) when leaving your vehicle.

Location

Power points may be in the following locations:

- In the center console.
- Next to the rear seat on the right hand side.

CIGAR LIGHTER (If Equipped)

Note: Do not hold the cigar lighter element pressed in.

Note: If you use the socket when the engine is not running, the battery may discharge.

Note: You can use the socket to power 12 volt appliances with a maximum current rating of 10 amps.

Note: Use only Ford accessory connectors or connectors specified for use with SAE standard sockets.



E245745

Press the element in to use the cigar lighter. It will pop out automatically.

Location

The cigar lighter may be found in the center console in place of the power point.

Storage Compartments

CENTER CONSOLE

WARNING

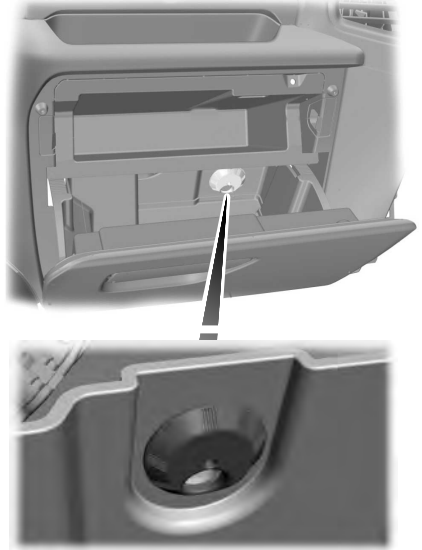


Use only soft cups in the cup holders. Hard objects can injure you in a crash.

Your vehicle may be equipped with a variety of console features. These include:

- front cup holders
- storage compartment under armrest with pen holder
- storage compartment for mobile phone in front of shifter lever
- auxiliary input jack (if equipped)
- USB (if equipped)
- auxiliary power point.

COOL BOX (If Equipped)



E241689

Cool Box allows you to direct cool air into the glove box compartment. Air conditioning must be turned on. Use the rotary control inside the glove box to enable this feature .

GLASSES HOLDER (If Equipped)

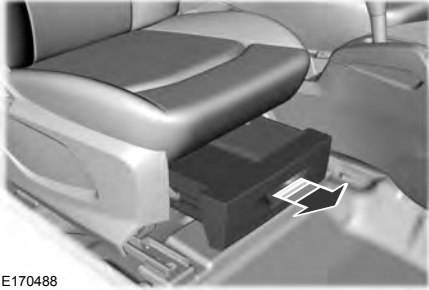


E150040

Storage Compartments

The glasses must be placed in the glasses holder with the lenses facing downward. If not, the glasses can fall down when the glasses holder is open.

UNDER SEAT STORAGE (If Equipped)




E170488


Note: *The maximum load is 1 kg. Exceeding the maximum storage capacity can cause damage to the storage box.*


Starting and Stopping the Engine


GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS

 Extended idling at high engine speeds can produce very high temperatures in the engine and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire or other damage.

 Do not park, idle or drive your vehicle on dry grass or other dry ground cover. The emission system heats up the engine compartment and exhaust system, creating the risk of fire.

 Do not start the engine in a closed garage or in other enclosed areas. Exhaust fumes can be toxic. Always open the garage door before you start the engine.

 Exhaust leaks may result in entry of harmful and potentially lethal fumes into the passenger compartment. If you smell exhaust fumes inside your vehicle, have your vehicle inspected immediately. Do not drive if you smell exhaust fumes.

If you disconnect the battery, your vehicle may exhibit some unusual driving characteristics for approximately 10 km after you reconnect it. This is because the engine management system must realign itself with the engine. You can disregard any unusual driving characteristics during this period.

When you start the engine, do not press the accelerator pedal before and during operation. Only use the accelerator pedal when you have difficulty starting the engine.

IGNITION SWITCH



E247596

Note: Make sure the key is clean before inserting it into any lock cylinder.

Note: Do not leave the key in the ignition for an extended period of time when the engine is not running. This is to prevent the vehicle battery from losing charge.

Switching the Ignition Off

Turn the key to position **0**.

Switching the Ignition On

Turn the key to position **I**. Electrical accessories, for example the radio, operate without the engine running.

Switching the Ignition On to Accessory Mode

Turn the key to position **II**. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Starting the Engine

Turn the key to position **III**. Release the key when the engine starts.

PUSH BUTTON IGNITION SWITCH (If Equipped)

WARNING



Always check that the steering wheel lock is deactivated before attempting to move your vehicle.

Failure to deactivate the steering wheel lock could result in a crash.

Note: The system may not function if the remote control is close to metal objects or electronic devices such as cell phones.

Note: The ignition automatically switches off when you leave your vehicle unattended. This is to prevent your vehicle battery from losing charge.

Note: A valid key must be located inside your vehicle to switch the ignition on and start the engine.

Switching the Ignition On (Accessory Mode)



E144447

Press the button once without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal. It is located on the instrument panel near the steering wheel. All electrical circuits and accessories are operational and the warning lamps and indicators illuminate.

Press the button again without your foot on the brake or clutch pedal to turn your vehicle off completely.

Starting the Engine

Vehicles with a Manual Transmission

Note: Releasing the clutch pedal during engine start stops the engine cranking and returns the ignition to on.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Press the button.

Vehicles with an Automatic Transmission

Note: Releasing the brake pedal during engine start stops the engine cranking and returns the ignition to on.

1. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Fully press the brake pedal.
3. Press the button.

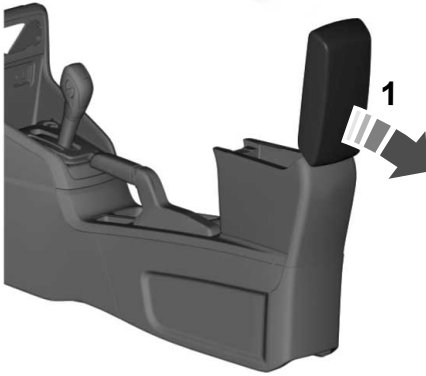
Failure to Start

The system does not function if:

- The key frequencies are jammed.
- The key battery has no charge.

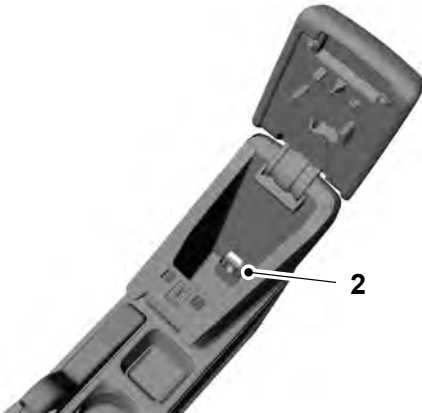
If you are unable to start your vehicle, do the following:

Starting and Stopping the Engine



E260637

1. Open the floor console storage compartment lid.



E260552

2. Place the key into the backup slot.
3. With the key in this position, you can use the push button ignition switch to switch the ignition on and start your vehicle.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with a manual transmission, releasing the clutch pedal or button during engine start stops the engine cranking and returns the ignition to on. A message appears in the display.

When the engine does not crank when the starter button is pressed:

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal (vehicles with a manual transmission) and brake pedal (vehicles with an automatic transmission).
2. Press the button until the engine starts.

Stopping the Engine with the Vehicle Stationary

Note: The ignition, all electrical circuits warning lamps and indicators turn off.

Note: If your vehicle is equipped with an automatic transmission, put the transmission selector lever in position **P**.

Briefly press the button.

Stopping the Engine When the Vehicle is Moving

Note: Switching off the engine when your vehicle is still moving results in a significant decrease in braking assistance. Higher effort is required to apply the brakes and to stop your vehicle. A significant decrease in steering assistance could also occur. The steering does not lock, but higher effort could be required to steer your vehicle. When you switch the ignition off, some electrical circuits, for example airbags, also turn off. If you unintentionally switch the ignition off, shift into neutral (N) and restart the engine.

- Press and hold the button for at least one second or press it three times within two seconds.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

- Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position (vehicles with a manual transmission) or position **N** (vehicles with an automatic transmission) and use the brakes to bring your vehicle to a safe stop.
- When your vehicle has stopped, move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position (vehicles with a manual transmission) or position **N** (vehicles with an automatic transmission) and switch the ignition off.

STARTING A GASOLINE ENGINE

Before starting the engine, check the following:

- Make sure all occupants have fastened their seatbelts.
- Make sure the headlamps and electrical accessories are off.
- Make sure the parking brake is on.
- Shift into park (P) or neutral.

Note: *You can only attempt to start the engine for a limited amount of time before the starting system temporarily disables. If you exceed the starting time limit, a message may appear and you cannot attempt to start the engine for at least 15 minutes.*

Cold or Hot Engine

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

Note: *Releasing the clutch pedal during engine starting stops the engine from cranking.*

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

Note: *Do not touch the accelerator pedal.*

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Start the engine.

All Vehicles

If the engine does not start within 10 seconds, wait for a short period and try again.

If the engine does not start after three attempts, wait ten seconds and follow the flooded engine procedure.

If you have difficulty starting the engine when the temperature is below -25°C , press the accelerator pedal to the mid-way point of its travel and try again.

Fuel Flooded Engine

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
3. Start the engine.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

1. Fully depress the brake pedal.
2. Shift into park (P) or neutral (N).
3. Fully depress the accelerator pedal and hold it there.
4. Start the engine.

All Vehicles

If the engine does not start, repeat the cold or hot engine procedure.

Starting and Stopping the Engine

Engine Idle Speed after Starting

The speed at which the engine idles immediately after starting minimizes vehicle emissions and maximizes cabin comfort and fuel economy.

The idle speed varies depending on certain factors. These include vehicle component and ambient temperatures as well as electrical and climate system demands.

Failure to Start

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

If the engine does not crank when you fully depress the clutch pedal with the ignition key in position **III**, follow this procedure:

1. Fully depress both the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

STARTING A DIESEL ENGINE

Cold or Hot Engine

All Vehicles

Note: When the temperature is below -15°C , you may need to crank the engine for up to 10 seconds.

Note: You can only operate the starter for a limited period of time.

Note: After a limited number of attempts to start your engine, the system will not allow you to try again until a period of time has elapsed, for example 30 minutes.



Switch the ignition on and wait until the glow plug indicator goes off.

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

Note: Releasing the clutch pedal while the engine is starting stops the engine from cranking and returns to the ignition on position.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal.
2. Start the engine.

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

Note: Do not touch the accelerator pedal.

Note: Releasing the brake pedal while the engine is starting stops the engine from cranking and returns to the ignition on position.

1. Move the transmission selector lever to position park (P) or neutral (N).
2. Fully depress the brake pedal.
3. Start the engine.

Failure to Start

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

Note: Remove all other keys from the center console.

If the engine does not crank when the clutch pedal has been fully depressed and the ignition key is turned to position **III**.

1. Fully depress the clutch and brake pedals.
2. Turn the key to position **III** until the engine has started.

Fuel and Refueling

SAFETY PRECAUTIONS

WARNINGS



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Fuels can cause serious injury or death if misused or mishandled.



Fuel may contain benzene, which is a cancer-causing agent.



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.

Follow these guidelines when refueling:

- Extinguish all smoking materials and any open flames before refueling your vehicle.
- Always switch the engine off before refueling.
- Automotive fuels can be harmful or fatal if swallowed. Fuel is highly toxic and if swallowed can cause death or permanent injury. If fuel is swallowed immediately call a physician, even if no symptoms are immediately apparent. The toxic effects of fuel may not be apparent for hours.

- Avoid inhaling fuel vapors. Inhaling fuel vapor can lead to eye and respiratory tract irritation. In severe cases, excessive or prolonged breathing of fuel vapor can cause serious illness and permanent injury.
- Avoid getting fuel in your eyes. If you splash fuel in your eyes, immediately remove contact lenses (if worn), flush with water for 15 minutes and seek medical attention. Failure to seek proper medical attention could lead to permanent injury.
- Fuels can be harmful if absorbed through the skin. If you splash fuel on your skin, clothing or both, promptly remove contaminated clothing and thoroughly wash your skin with soap and water. Repeated or prolonged skin contact causes skin irritation.
- Be particularly careful if you are taking Antabuse or other forms of Disulfiram for the treatment of alcoholism. Breathing fuel vapors could cause an adverse reaction, serious personal injury or sickness. Immediately call a physician if you experience any adverse reactions.

FUEL QUALITY - DIESEL

WARNING



Do not mix kerosene, paraffin, oil, gasoline or other liquids with diesel. This may cause a chemical reaction and engine damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Use diesel that meets the specification defined by EN 590 or the relevant national specification.

Note: *We recommend that you use only high quality fuel. The use of aftermarket fuel additives or other engine treatments are not recommended.*

Fuel and Refueling

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives to prevent fuel waxing.

Long-Term Storage

Most diesel fuels contain biodiesel. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain biodiesel if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months.

FUEL QUALITY - GASOLINE

WARNINGS



Do not mix gasoline with oil, diesel or other liquids. This could cause a chemical reaction.



Do not use leaded gasoline or gasoline with additives containing other metallic compounds (e.g. manganese-based). They could damage the emission system.

Note: We recommend that you use only high quality fuel.

Note: We do not recommend the use of additional additives or other engine treatments for normal vehicle use.

The engine in your vehicle has been optimized for operation using 95 octane unleaded gasoline that meets the specification defined by EN 228 or the equivalent national specification.

The engine in your vehicle can also operate using 91 octane unleaded gasoline. However if you choose to do so, you may notice some minor loss of performance, economy and increase engine noise.

Your vehicle is suitable for use with ethanol blends up to 10% (E5 and E10).

Note: Using gasoline containing more than 10% ethanol may damage the engine or emission system and may affect the vehicle Warranty.

Note: The use of gasoline containing ethanol may increase the fuel consumption of your vehicle.

Long-Term Storage

Most gasoline contains ethanol. We recommend that you fill the fuel tank with fuel that does not contain ethanol if you intend to store your vehicle for more than two months. Alternatively, we recommend that you seek advice from an authorized dealer.

RUNNING OUT OF FUEL

Avoid running out of fuel because this situation may have an adverse effect on engine components.

If you have run out of fuel:

- You may need to cycle the ignition from off to on several times after refueling to allow the fuel system to pump the fuel from the tank to the engine. On restarting, cranking time will take a few seconds longer than normal. With keyless ignition, just start the engine. Crank time will be longer than usual.
- Normally, adding 4 L of fuel is enough to restart the engine. If the vehicle is out of fuel and on a steep grade, more than 4 L may be required.

CATALYTIC CONVERTER

WARNING



Do not park or idle your vehicle over dry leaves, dry grass or other combustible materials. The exhaust will radiate a considerable amount of heat during use, and after you have switched the engine off. This is a potential fire hazard.

Fuel and Refueling

Driving with a Catalytic Converter

WARNINGS



Avoid running out of fuel.



Do not crank the engine for long periods.



Do not run the engine when a spark plug lead is disconnected.



Do not push-start or tow-start your vehicle. Use booster cables. See **Jump Starting the Vehicle** (page 130).



Do not switch the ignition off when driving.

REFUELING

WARNINGS



When refueling always shut the engine off and never allow sparks or open flames near the fuel tank filler valve. Never smoke or use a cell phone while refueling. Fuel vapor is extremely hazardous under certain conditions. Avoid inhaling excess fumes.



The fuel system may be under pressure. If you hear a hissing sound near the fuel filler inlet, do not refuel until the sound stops. Otherwise, fuel may spray out, which could cause serious personal injury.



Do not remove the fuel pump nozzle from its fully inserted position when refueling.



Do not overfill the fuel tank. The pressure in an overfilled tank may cause leakage and lead to fuel spray and fire.

WARNINGS



Stop refueling when the fuel pump nozzle automatically shuts off for the first time. Failure to follow this will fill the expansion space in the fuel tank and could lead to fuel overflowing.



Wait at least 10 seconds before removing the fuel pump nozzle to allow any residual fuel to drain into the fuel tank.

Note: Do not attempt to start the engine if you have filled the fuel tank with incorrect fuel.

Fuel Filler Cap

Your fuel tank filler cap has a regular turn style design, with two to three turns on or off.

When fueling your vehicle:

1. Turn the engine off.
2. Fully open the fuel tank filler door until it engages.
3. Carefully turn the filler cap counterclockwise two to three turns, until it opens.
4. Hang the fuel cap tether cord on the filler door hook.
5. After refueling, to install the cap, align it with the filler pipe.
6. Turn the filler cap clockwise two to three turns until you feel a strong resistance and it clicks twice.
7. Fully close the fuel tank filler door.

If you must replace the fuel filler cap, replace it with a fuel filler cap that is designed for your vehicle. The customer warranty may be void for any damage to the fuel tank or fuel system if the correct genuine Ford fuel filler cap is not used.

Fuel and Refueling

FUEL CONSUMPTION

Note: *The amount of usable fuel in the empty reserve varies and should not be relied upon to increase driving range. When refueling your vehicle after the fuel gauge indicates empty, you might not be able to refuel the full amount of the advertised capacity of the fuel tank due to the empty reserve still present in the tank.*

Indicated capacity is the difference in the amount of fuel in a full tank and a tank when the fuel gauge indicates empty. Empty reserve is the amount of fuel in the tank after the fuel gauge indicates empty.

Your dealer can give you advice on improving your fuel consumption.

Filling the Fuel Tank

For consistent results when filling the fuel tank:

- Turn the ignition off before fueling; an inaccurate reading results if the engine is left running.
- Use the same fill rate (low-medium-high) each time the tank is filled.
- The maximum tank capacity, during fueling, is reached when the pump is automatically cut off for the second time.

Results are most accurate when the filling method is consistent.

Fuel Economy

Your vehicle calculates fuel economy figures through the trip computer average fuel function. See **Trip Computer** (page 65).

The first 1,500 km of driving is the break-in period of the engine. A more accurate measurement is obtained after 3,000 km.

Impacting Fuel Economy

- Incorrect tire inflation pressures. See **Tire Pressures** (page 181).
- Fully loading your vehicle.
- Carrying unnecessary weight.
- Adding certain accessories to your vehicle such as bug deflectors, rollbars or light bars, running boards and ski racks.
- Using fuel blended with alcohol.
- Fuel economy may decrease with lower temperatures.
- Fuel economy may decrease when driving short distances.
- You may get better fuel economy when driving on flat terrain than when driving on hilly terrain.

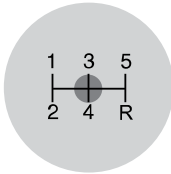
Transmission

MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Using the Clutch

Note: Failure to fully depress the clutch pedal to the floor may cause increased shift efforts, prematurely wear transmission components or damage the transmission.

Note: Do not drive with your foot resting on the clutch pedal or use the clutch pedal to hold your vehicle at a standstill while waiting on a hill. These actions will reduce the life of the clutch.



E157512

Manual transmission vehicles have a starter interlock that prevents cranking the engine unless the clutch pedal is fully depressed.

Starting Your Vehicle

1. Make sure the parking brake is fully set and move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position.
2. Fully depress the clutch pedal then start the engine.
3. Press the brake pedal and move the transmission selector lever to first or reverse gear.
4. Release the parking brake and slowly release the clutch pedal while slowly pressing on the accelerator.

During each shift, make sure you fully depress the clutch pedal.

Note: Regularly check the floor mats to make sure they are secure.

Recommended Shift Speeds

Note: Do not move the transmission selector lever to first gear when your vehicle is moving faster than 25 km/h. This will damage the clutch.

We recommend you change gears according to the gear shift indicator to achieve the best fuel economy for your vehicle.

Reverse

Note: Do not move the transmission selector lever to reverse gear when your vehicle is moving. This can cause damage to the transmission.

1. Fully depress the clutch pedal to disengage clutch.
2. Move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position and wait at least three seconds before moving it to reverse.

If reverse gear is not fully engaged, press the clutch pedal down and move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position. Release the clutch pedal for a moment, depress the clutch again and then move the transmission selector lever to reverse.

Parking Your Vehicle

WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully and make sure you shift the gearshift lever to first gear. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.

To park your vehicle:

Transmission

1. Press the brake pedal and move the transmission selector lever to the neutral position.
2. Fully apply the parking brake, hold the clutch pedal down, then move the transmission selector lever to first gear.
3. Switch the ignition off.

AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS



Always fully apply the parking brake. Make sure you shift into park (P) for vehicles with an automatic transmission. Switch the ignition off and remove the key whenever you leave your vehicle.



Do not apply the brake pedal and accelerator pedal simultaneously. Applying both pedals simultaneously for more than a few seconds will limit engine performance, which may result in difficulty maintaining speed in traffic and could lead to serious injury.

Note: *Under certain conditions you may not be able to shift out of park unless the Intelligent Access Key is inside the vehicle.*

Selector Lever Positions

- P Park
- R Reverse
- N Neutral
- D Drive
- S Sport mode (if equipped)
- L Low (if equipped)

Press the button on the front of the gearshift lever to shift to each position.

Brake needs to be depressed to move out of (P).

The gearshift lever position will be shown in the instrument cluster display.

Park (P)

WARNING



Move the transmission selector lever to park (P) only when your vehicle is stationary.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels and the transmission is locked.

You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

Note: *A warning tone sounds if you open the driver door and you have not shifted the gearshift lever to park (P).*

Reverse (R)

WARNING



Move the transmission selector lever to reverse (R) only when your vehicle is stationary and the engine is at idle speed.

Shift the gearshift lever to reverse (R) to allow your vehicle to move backward.

Neutral (N)

WARNING



In neutral (N) your vehicle has the ability to roll freely. If you intend to leave your vehicle, make sure you apply the parking brake.

In this position, power is not transmitted to the driven wheels but the transmission is not locked.

You can start the engine with the gearshift lever in this position.

Transmission

Drive (D)

Drive (D) is the normal driving position for the best fuel economy and smoothness. The overdrive function allows automatic upshifts and downshifts through all forward gears.

Shift the gearshift lever to drive (D) to allow your vehicle to move forward and shift automatically through the forward gears.

The transmission will shift to the appropriate gear for optimum performance based on ambient temperature, road gradient, vehicle load and your input.

Sport Mode (S)

Switch on sport mode by shifting the gearshift lever to sport (S). In Sport mode the transmission will select the optimum gear for best performance. This gear selection is typically lower than that of drive (D) and the shifts are faster.

Low (L)



E250244

- Provides maximum engine braking.
- The transmission may be shifted into low (L) at any vehicle speed.
- Is not intended for use under extended or normal driving conditions and results in lower fuel economy.

Grade assist

Press the transmission control switch on the side of the gearshift lever to activate grade assist.

- Provides additional grade braking with a combination of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging to help maintain vehicle speed when descending a grade.
- As your vehicle determines the amount of engine motoring and high-voltage battery charging, you may notice the engine speed increasing and decreasing to help maintain your vehicle speed when descending a grade.
- The grade assist lamp in the instrument cluster is illuminated.

The grade assist lamp will appear in the instrument cluster when grade assist is turned on. Press the transmission control switch again to return to normal drive (D).

SelectShift™ Automatic Transmission (If Equipped)

This feature gives you the ability to change gears up or down as desired.

Downshifts are allowed unless the engine speed after the shift exceeds the maximum allowable limit.

In order to prevent engine stalls, SelectShift automatically downshifts at low engine speeds.

Note: *Engine damage may occur if you maintain excessive engine revving without shifting.*

Transmission

SelectShift does not automatically upshift, even if the engine is approaching the RPM limit, unless the accelerator pedal is at full travel.

Take notice of the shift indicator lamp, which alerts you when to shift to make sure you achieve the highest level of efficiency and fuel economy.

If equipped with the toggle on the gearshift lever, press the + toggle switch on the side of the gearshift lever to activate SelectShift.



E250374

If equipped with steering wheel paddles, pull the + paddle on the steering wheel to activate SelectShift.

- Pull the right paddle (+) to upshift.
- Pull the left paddle (-) to downshift.



E144821

SelectShift in drive (D):

- Provides temporary manual control of the gear selection when a more demanding response is required (for example, when towing or overtaking). This mode holds a selected gear for a temporary period of time dependent on driver input (for example, steering wheel or accelerator pedal input).

SelectShift in sport (S):

- Provides manual gear selection without a time out period.

To exit SelectShift mode:

- If in drive (D), move the selector to sport (S) and then back to drive (D). If in sport (S), move the selector to drive (D) and then back to sport (S).

Upshift to the recommended shift speeds according to the following chart:

Upshifts when accelerating (recommended for best fuel economy)	
Shift from:	
1 - 2	24 km/h
2 - 3	40 km/h
3 - 4	64 km/h
4 - 5	72 km/h
5 - 6	80 km/h

Transmission

The instrument cluster displays your current gear. If a gear is requested but not available due to vehicle conditions (too low or too high engine speed), the current gear flashes three times.

Note: At full accelerator pedal travel, the transmission may automatically downshift for maximum performance.

Emergency Park Position Release Lever

Note: Do not drive your vehicle until you verify that the brake lamps are working.

WARNINGS



When doing this procedure, you need to take the transmission out of park (P) which means your vehicle can roll freely. To avoid unwanted vehicle movement, always fully apply the parking brake prior to doing this procedure. Use wheels chocks if appropriate.



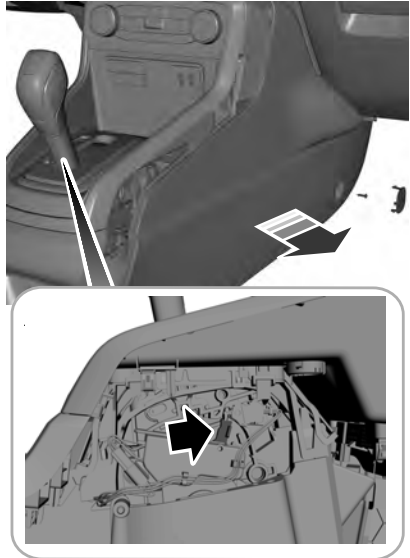
If the parking brake is fully released, but the brake warning lamp remains illuminated, the brakes may not be working properly. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible.

Note: For some markets this feature will be disabled.

Your vehicle is equipped with a brake-shift interlock feature that prevents moving the gearshift lever from park (P) when the ignition is on and the brake pedal is not pressed.

If you cannot move the transmission selector lever out of park (P) position with the ignition in the on position and the brake pedal pressed, a malfunction may have occurred. It is possible that a fuse has blown or your vehicle's brake lamps are not operating properly. See **Fuse Specification Chart** (page 133).

If the fuse is not blown and the brake lamps are working properly, the following procedure will allow you to move the gearshift lever from park (P).



E250139

1. Remove the side panel on the right side of the gearshift lever.
2. Locate the access hole.
3. Insert a screwdriver (or similar tool) into the access hole and press the lever forward while pulling the gearshift lever out of the park (P) position and into the neutral (N) position.
4. Remove the tool and reinstall the panel.
5. Start the vehicle and release the parking brake.

Transmission

Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning

This feature may increase durability and provide consistent shift feel over the life of your vehicle. A new vehicle or transmission may have firm shifts, soft shifts or both. This operation is considered normal and does not affect function or durability of the transmission. Over time, the adaptive learning process fully updates transmission operation.

If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle if the engine is not at normal operating temperature or damage to the transmission may occur.*

Note: *Do not rock your vehicle for more than a minute or damage to the transmission and tires may occur, or the engine may overheat.*

If your vehicle gets stuck in mud or snow, it may be rocked out by shifting between forward and reverse gears, stopping between shifts in a steady pattern.

Press lightly on the accelerator in each gear.

Brakes

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any handheld device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Note: *Occasional brake noise is normal. If a metal-to-metal, continuous grinding or continuous squeal sound is present, the brake linings may be worn-out. If your vehicle has continuous vibration or shudder in the steering wheel while braking, have your vehicle checked by an authorized dealer.*

Note: *Brake dust may accumulate on the wheels, even under normal driving conditions. Some dust is inevitable as the brakes wear. See **Cleaning the Wheels** (page 169).*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the brake lamps may flash during heavy braking. Following this the hazard warning flashers may also flash when your vehicle comes to a stop.*

Wet brakes result in reduced braking efficiency. Gently press the brake pedal a few times when driving from a car wash or standing water to dry the brakes.

Brake Over Accelerator

In the event the accelerator pedal becomes stuck or entrapped, apply steady and firm pressure to the brake pedal to slow the vehicle and reduce engine power. If you experience this condition, apply the brakes and bring your vehicle to a safe stop. Shift the transmission to park (P) (automatic transmission) or to a low gear (manual transmission), switch the engine off and apply the parking brake. Inspect the accelerator pedal and the area around it for any items or debris that may be obstructing its movement. If none are found and the condition persists, have your vehicle towed to the dealer for service.

Brake Assist

Brake assist detects when you brake heavily by measuring the rate at which you press the brake pedal. It provides maximum braking efficiency as long as you press the pedal. Brake assist can reduce stopping distances in critical situations.

Anti-lock Brake System (If Equipped)

This system helps you maintain steering control and vehicle stability during emergency stops by keeping the brakes from locking.

HINTS ON DRIVING WITH ANTI-LOCK BRAKES

The anti-lock braking system does not eliminate the risks when:

- You drive too closely to the vehicle in front of you.
- Your vehicle is hydroplaning.
- You take corners too fast.
- The road surface is poor.

Brakes

Note: If the system activates, the brake pedal may pulse and may travel further. Maintain pressure on the brake pedal. You may also hear a noise from the system. This is normal.

PARKING BRAKE

Vehicles With Automatic Transmission

WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully and leave your vehicle with the transmission selector lever in position P.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill move the transmission selector lever to position P and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

Vehicles With Manual Transmission

WARNING



Always set the parking brake fully.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing uphill select first gear and turn the steering wheel away from the curb.

Note: If you park your vehicle on a hill and facing downhill select reverse gear and turn the steering wheel toward the curb.

All Vehicles

Note: Do not press the release button while pulling the lever up.

To apply the parking brake:

1. Press the foot brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the parking brake lever up to its fullest extent.

To release the parking brake:

1. Press the brake pedal firmly.
2. Pull the lever up slightly.
3. Press the release button and push the lever down.

HILL START ASSIST (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



The system does not replace the parking brake. When you leave your vehicle, always apply the parking brake and shift the transmission into park (P) for automatic transmission or first gear for manual transmission.



You must remain in your vehicle when the system turns on. At all times, you are responsible for controlling your vehicle, supervising the system and intervening, if required. Failure to take care may result in the loss of control of your vehicle, serious personal injury or death.



The system turns off if there is a malfunction or if you excessively rev the engine.

The system makes it easier to pull away when your vehicle is on a slope without the need to use the parking brake.

When the system activates, your vehicle remains stationary on a slope for a few seconds after you release the brake pedal. This allows you time to move your foot from the brake to the accelerator pedal. The brakes release when the engine has

Brakes

developed sufficient torque to prevent your vehicle from rolling down the slope. This is an advantage when pulling away on a slope, for example from a car park ramp, traffic lights or when reversing uphill into a parking space.

The system activates on any slope that causes your vehicle to roll.

Note: *There is no warning lamp to indicate the system is either on or off.*

Using Hill Start Assist

1. Press the brake pedal to bring your vehicle to a complete standstill. Keep the brake pedal pressed and shift into first gear when facing uphill or reverse (R) when facing downhill.
2. The system activates if the sensors detect that your vehicle is on a slope.
3. When you remove your foot from the brake pedal, your vehicle remains on the slope without rolling away for a few seconds.
4. Pull away in the normal manner.

Switching the System On and Off

Vehicles with Manual Transmission

You can switch this feature on or off in the information display. The system remembers the last setting when you start your vehicle.

Vehicles with Automatic Transmission

The system turns on when you switch the ignition on and you cannot switch the system off.

Traction Control (If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

The traction control system helps avoid drive wheel spin and loss of traction.

If your vehicle begins to slide, the system applies the brakes to individual wheels and, when needed, reduces engine power at the same time. If the wheels spin when accelerating on slippery or loose surfaces, the system reduces engine power in order to increase traction.

USING TRACTION CONTROL

In certain situations for example, stuck in snow or mud, turning the traction control off may be beneficial as this allows the wheels to spin with full engine power. Depending on the type of system you have on your vehicle, you can either turn the system off using the information display or by pressing the button.

Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls (If Equipped)

Your vehicle comes with this feature already enabled. If required, you can switch this feature off using the information display controls. See **Principle of Operation** (page 109).

Switching the System Off Using a Switch (If Equipped)

The button is located in the instrument panel.

Press the button. You will see a message in conjunction with an illuminated icon in the display. Press the button again to return the system to normal mode.

When you switch the traction control system off, stability control remains fully active.

System Indicator Lights and Messages

WARNING



If a failure has been detected within the AdvanceTrac system, the stability control light will illuminate steadily. Verify that the AdvanceTrac system was not manually disabled through the information display. If the stability control light still illuminates steadily, have the system serviced by an authorized dealer immediately. Operating your vehicle with AdvanceTrac disabled could lead to an increased risk of loss of vehicle control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death.



The stability control light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and flashes when a driving condition activates the stability system.



The stability control off light temporarily illuminates on engine start-up and stays on when you turn the traction control system off.

When you turn the traction control system off or on, a message appears in the information display showing system status.

Stability Control (If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Electronic Stability Control

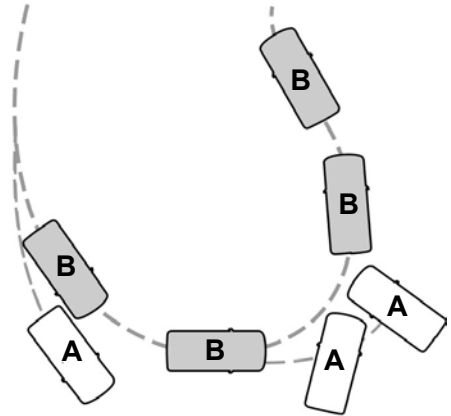
WARNING



The system is designed to aid the driver. It is not intended to replace your attention and judgment. You are still responsible to drive with due care and attention.

The system supports stability when your vehicle starts to slide away from your intended path. The system does this by braking individual wheels and reducing engine torque.

The system also provides an enhanced traction control function by reducing engine torque if the wheels spin when you accelerate. This helps to pull away on slippery roads or loose surfaces, and improves comfort by limiting wheel spin in hairpin bends.



E72903

- A Without ESC.
- B With ESC.

Stability Control Warning Lamp



Flashes during operation. See **Warning Lamps and Indicators** (page 58).

USING STABILITY CONTROL

The system automatically activates when you start your vehicle. The system cannot be completely turned off, but the electronic stability control system is disabled when the transmission selector lever is in position **R**. You can turn off the traction control portion of the system independently. See **Using Traction Control** (page 109).

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

WARNINGS



The system may not detect objects with surfaces that absorb reflection. Always drive with due care and attention. Failure to take care may result in a crash.



To help avoid personal injury, always use caution when in reverse (R) and when using the sensing system.



The system may not detect small or moving objects, particularly those close to the ground.

Note: *Certain add-on devices installed around the rear fascia such as large trailer hitches, bike or surfboard racks or certain add-on devices installed around the front fascia such as license plate brackets or frames, bumper covers, bumper guards or any other device that may block the normal detection zone of the system, may create false beeps.*

Note: *In these cases the add-on devices must be removed in order to prevent the false beeps.*

Note: *Keep the sensors free from snow, ice and large accumulations of dirt. Blocked sensors may affect system accuracy. Do not clean the sensors with sharp objects.*

Note: *If your vehicle sustains damage to the bumper or fascia, leaving it misaligned or bent, the sensing zone may be altered causing inaccurate measurement of obstacles or false alarms.*

Note: *When a trailer is connected to the vehicle, the Rear Sensing System may detect the trailer and therefore provide warnings. It is suggested that the driver disables the Rear Sensing System when a trailer is connected to the vehicle to prevent these warnings.*

We recommend that you take some time to get to know the system and its limitations by reading this section.

The sensing system warns the driver of obstacles within a certain range of your vehicle. The system automatically turns on each time you switch the ignition on.

The system may provide display or sound warnings when the detected obstacle is 30 cm or less from the bumper.

The system can be switched off through the information display menu or from the pop-up message that appears once you shift the transmission into reverse (R). If your vehicle is equipped with a front sensing system, you can switch the system off using the parking aid button. See **Information Messages** (page 65).

If a fault is present in the system, a warning message appears in the information display and does not allow you to switch the system on.

See **Information Messages** (page 65).

REAR PARKING AID

The rear parking aid sensors automatically turn on when you shift into reverse (R).

As your vehicle moves closer to the obstacle, the rate of the audible warning increases. When the obstacle is less than 30 cm the warning sounds continuously. If the system detects an object farther than 30 cm from the corners of the bumper, the tone sounds for only three seconds. If the system detects an approaching object the warning sounds again.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)



E130178

Coverage area of up to 1.8 m from the rear bumper. There is decreased coverage area at the outer corners of the bumper.


The system detects certain objects while the transmission is in reverse (R):


- Moving toward a stationary object at a speed of 5 km/h or less.
- Not moving, but a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of 5 km/h or less.
- Moving at a speed of less than 3 mph (5 km/h) and a moving object is approaching the rear of your vehicle at a speed of less than 5 km/h. The system provides audio warnings only when your vehicle is moving or when your vehicle is stationary and the detected obstacle is less than 30 cm away from the bumper. Additionally, the system provides obstacle distance indication through the center stack display (if equipped). The visual indications are present when the transmission is in reverse (R).

- As the distance to the obstacle decreases (obstacle becomes closer), the indicator blocks illuminate and move towards the vehicle icon.
- If there is no obstacle detected, the distance indicator blocks show greyed out.

REAR VIEW CAMERA (If Equipped)


WARNINGS

 The rear view camera system is a reverse aid supplement device that still requires the driver to use it in conjunction with the interior and exterior mirrors for maximum coverage.

 Objects that are close to either corner of the bumper or under the bumper, might not be seen on the screen due to the limited coverage of the camera system.

Note: *Reverse your vehicle as slow as possible, higher speeds may limit your reaction time to stop your vehicle.*

WARNING

 Use caution when turning camera features on or off when the transmission is not in park (P). Make sure your vehicle is not moving.

The rear view camera system provides a video image of the area behind your vehicle.

During operation, lines appear in the display which represent your vehicle's path and proximity to objects behind your vehicle.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)



E247559

The camera is on the rear bumper.

Using the Rear View Camera System

WARNING



If the vehicle battery is disconnected, the guidelines are not fully functional directly after the battery is reconnected. The guidelines become fully functional after you drive your vehicle as straight as possible for five minutes at a minimum speed of 50 km/h.

The rear view camera system displays what is behind your vehicle when you place the transmission in reverse (R).

The system uses three types of guides to help you see what is behind your vehicle:

- Active guidelines: Show the intended path of your vehicle when reversing.
- Fixed guidelines: Show the actual path your vehicle is moving in while reversing in a straight line. This can be helpful when backing into a parking space or aligning your vehicle with another object behind you.
- Centerline: Helps align the center of your vehicle with an object (for example, a trailer).

Note: *If the transmission is in reverse (R) and the luggage compartment is ajar, no rear view camera features are displayed.*

Note: *If the image comes on while the transmission is not in reverse (R), have the system checked as soon as possible.*

Note: *When towing, the camera only sees what is being towed behind your vehicle. This might not provide adequate coverage as it usually provides in normal operation and some objects might not be seen. In some vehicles, the guidelines may disappear once the trailer tow connector is engaged.*

Note: *The camera may not operate correctly under the following conditions:*

- Nighttime or dark areas if one or both reverse lamps are not operating.
- The camera's view is obstructed by mud, water or debris. Clean the lens with a soft, lint-free cloth and non-abrasive cleaner.
- The rear of your vehicle is hit or damaged, causing the camera to become misaligned.

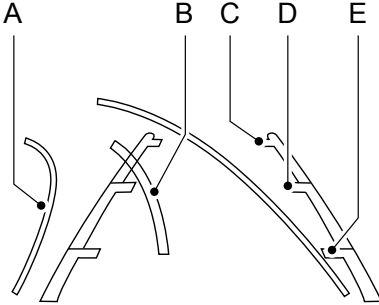
Access the rear view camera system settings through the information display. See **General Information** (page 62).

After changing a system setting, the display screen shows a preview of the selected features.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Camera Guidelines

Note: Dynamic guidelines are only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).



E247578

- A Active guidelines
- B Centerline
- C Fixed guideline: Green zone
- D Fixed guideline: Yellow zone
- E Fixed guideline: Red zone


Active guidelines are only shown with fixed guidelines. To use active guidelines, turn the steering wheel to point the guidelines toward an intended path. If the steering wheel position is changed while reversing, your vehicle might deviate from the original intended path.

The fixed and active guidelines fade in and out depending on the steering wheel position. The active guidelines are not shown when the steering wheel position is straight.

Always use caution while reversing. Objects in the red zone are closest to your vehicle and objects in the green zone are farther away. Objects are getting closer to your vehicle as they move from the green zone to the yellow or red zones. Use the exterior mirrors and rear view mirror to get better coverage on both sides and rear of your vehicle.

Manual Zoom

WARNING

 When manual zoom is on, the full area behind your vehicle may not show. Be aware of your surroundings when using the manual zoom feature.

Note: Manual zoom is only available when the transmission is in reverse (R).

Note: When manual zoom is enabled, only the centerline is shown.

This allows you to get a closer view of an object behind your vehicle. The zoom is only active while the transmission is in reverse (R). When the transmission is shifted out of reverse (R), the feature automatically turns off and must be reset when it is used again.

Selectable settings for this feature are + and -. The default setting for the manual zoom is OFF.

Rear Camera Delay (If Equipped)

When you shift the transmission out of reverse (R) and into any gear while the rear camera delay is active, the camera image displays until:

- Your vehicle speed sufficiently increases.
- You shift your vehicle into park (P).

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF. The default setting for the rear camera delay is OFF.

Parking Aids (If Equipped)

Enhanced Park Aids

Note: *The reverse sensing system is not effective at speeds above 10 km/h and may not detect certain angular or moving objects.*

When the sensing system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green highlights at the top of the image. The alert highlights all objects detected.

Selectable settings for this feature are ON and OFF.

Cruise Control (If Equipped)

PRINCIPLE OF OPERATION

Cruise control allows you to control your speed using the switches on the steering wheel. You can use cruise control when you exceed 20 mph or 30 km/h.

Note: *The system cancels if your vehicle speed drops below 10 mph / 16km/h under the set speed when driving uphill.*

Changing the Set Speed

Press and release SET + or SET -. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in 1km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in 1 mph increments.

USING CRUISE CONTROL

WARNINGS



Do not use cruise control on winding roads, in heavy traffic or when the road surface is slippery. This could result in loss of vehicle control, serious injury or death.



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

To help the system to maintain the set speed when going downhill, downshift to a lower gear.

Note: *The system cancels if your vehicle speed drops below 16 km/h under the set speed when driving uphill.*

The cruise controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching Cruise Control On

Press and release the cruise control button.



The indicator appears in the information display.

Setting the Cruise Speed

1. Drive to desired speed.
2. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.
3. Take your foot off the accelerator pedal.
4. The indicator changes color in the information display.

Changing the Set Speed

- Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**. When you select km/h as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 km/h increments. When you select mph as the display measurement in the information display the set speed changes in approximately 1 mph increments.
- Press the accelerator or brake pedal until you reach the desired speed. Press and release **SET+** or **SET-**.
- Press and hold **SET+** or **SET-**. Release the control when you reach the desired speed.

Note: *If you accelerate by pressing the accelerator pedal, the set speed will not change. When you release the accelerator pedal, your vehicle returns to the speed that you previously set.*

Canceling the Set Speed

Press and release **CAN** or tap the brake pedal. The set speed does not erase.

Resuming the Set Speed

Press and release **RES**.

Cruise Control (If Equipped)

Switching Cruise Control Off

Press and release the OFF button, when the system is in standby mode or switch the ignition off.

Note: *You erase the set speed when you switch the system off.*

Driving Aids

SPEED LIMITER

Principle of Operation

WARNING



When you are going downhill, your vehicle speed could increase above the set speed. The system does not apply the brakes.

The system allows you to set a speed to which your vehicle becomes limited. The set speed sets the effective maximum speed of your vehicle. You can temporarily exceed the set speed if required, for example to overtake.

Using Speed Limiter

The controls are on the steering wheel.

Switching the System On and Off

LIM

Press to set the system in standby mode. Press again to switch the system off.

Setting the Speed Limiter

SET+

Press with the system in standby mode to set the speed limiter to the current vehicle speed. Press

SET-

again to set the desired speed limit. The set speed is stored and displayed in the information display.

You can adjust the set speed in small or large increments. Press the button once to adjust the set speed in small increments. Press and hold the button to adjust the set speed in large increments.

Canceling the Set Speed

CAN

Press to cancel the set speed limiter. The system goes into standby mode.

Resuming the Set Speed

RES

Press to resume the set speed limiter.

Intentionally Exceeding the Speed Limit

Firmly press the accelerator pedal to temporarily exceed the set speed limit. The system resumes when the vehicle speed drops below the set speed limit.

System Warnings

If you intentionally exceed the set speed, a warning flashes in the information display.

If you unintentionally exceed the set speed, for example when you are going downhill, a warning flashes in the information display and a tone sounds.

STEERING

Electric Power Steering

WARNINGS



The electric power steering system has diagnostic checks that continuously monitor the system. If a fault is detected, a message displays in the information display. Stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so. Switch the ignition off. After at least 10 seconds, switch the ignition on and watch the information display for a steering system warning message. If a steering system warning message returns, have the system checked as soon as possible.



If the system detects an error, you may not feel a difference in the steering, however a serious condition may exist. Have your vehicle checked as soon as possible, failure to do so may result in loss of steering control.

Driving Aids

Note: *Your vehicle is equipped with an electric power-assisted steering system. There is no fluid reservoir to check or fill.*

The electric power steering system operates by an electric motor, which reduces the effort on the driver's steering wheel.

The system operates progressively and during maneuvers, the system leaves the effort lighter. As the vehicle speed increases, it reduces its action to improve the control of the vehicle.

If your vehicle loses electrical power while you are driving (or if the ignition is turned off), you can steer the vehicle manually, but it takes more effort. Extreme continuous steering may increase the effort it takes for you to steer. This occurs to prevent internal overheating and permanent damage to your steering system. If this should occur, you will not lose the ability to steer the vehicle manually nor will it cause permanent damage. Typical steering and driving maneuvers will allow the system to cool and steering assist will return to normal.

Steering Tips

Avoid sudden movements with the steering wheel. The force required to change the vehicle direction is lower, compared to a vehicle with mechanical steering.

If the steering wanders or pulls, check for:

- An improperly inflated tire
- Uneven tire wear
- Loose or worn suspension components
- Loose or worn steering components
- Improper vehicle alignment

A high crown in the road or high crosswinds may also make the steering seem to wander or pull.

Load Carrying

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS



Use only load securing straps that meet your needs, and that prevent the load from turning loose and causing an accident.



Make sure that you secure all loose items properly.



Place luggage and other loads as low and as far forward as possible within the luggage or loadspace.



Do not drive with the liftgate or rear door open. Exhaust fumes may enter your vehicle.



Do not exceed the maximum front and rear axle loads for your vehicle. See **Vehicle Identification Plate** (page 192).



Do not allow items to contact the rear windows.

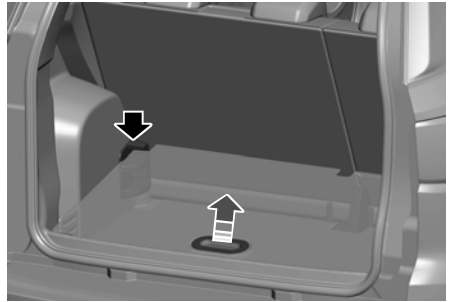
LUGGAGE ANCHOR POINTS



E142324

REAR UNDER FLOOR STORAGE

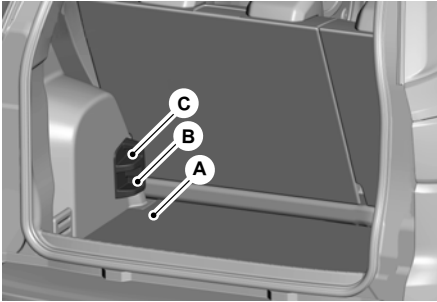
Adjustable Load Floor (If Equipped)



E252241

The adjustable load floor can be set to three different positions. When the Adjustable Load Floor is in the highest position and the rear seat backrests are folded forward, the Adjustable Load Floor and the folded seats form a continuous flat surface.

Load Carrying



E252488

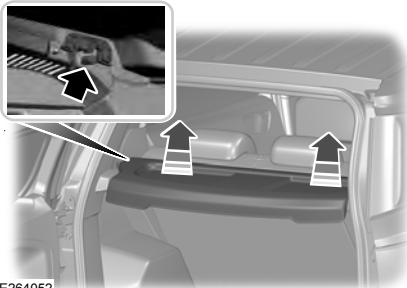
- A Lowest position.
- B Middle position.
- C Highest position.

LUGGAGE COVERS

WARNING



Do not place objects on the luggage cover. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury or death in the event of a sudden stop or crash.



E264052

1. Pull the luggage cover upward to release it from the retaining points on both sides.
2. Rotate the luggage cover 90° to remove.

Install in reverse order. When you hear a click sound, the luggage cover is locked on the retaining points.

ROOF RACKS AND LOAD CARRIERS

WARNING



When loading the roof racks, we recommend you evenly distribute the load, as well as maintain a low center of gravity. Loaded vehicles, with higher centers of gravity, may handle differently than unloaded vehicles. Take extra precautions, such as slower speeds and increased stopping distance, when driving a heavily loaded vehicle.

The maximum recommended load, evenly distributed on the crossbars, is:

- 15 kg

Note: *Loads should never be placed directly on the roof panel. The roof panel is not designed to directly carry a load.*

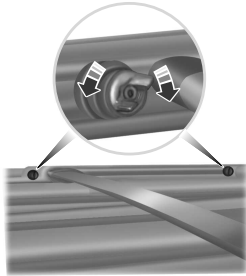
For proper function of the roof rack system, loads must be placed directly on crossbars affixed to the roof rack side rails. Your vehicle may be equipped with factory-installed crossbars. Ford Genuine Accessory crossbars, designed specifically for your vehicle, are also recommended for use with your roof rack system.

Make sure that the load is securely fastened. Check the tightness of the load before driving and at each fuel stop.

Load Carrying

Adjusting the Crossbar (If Equipped)

Note: Wind noise can be minimized by either removing or repositioning the crossbar when not in use. Position the front crossbar in the intermediate position to minimize wind noise. The crossbar can be adjusted or removed using the steps below.



E142448

1. Remove the crossbar thumbwheels at both sides of the crossbar by turning them counterclockwise.
2. Remove the crossbar by rotating it clockwise and sliding the ends off of the shoulder bolts in the side rails.
3. Move the front crossbar to the new side rail position and slide the crossbar onto the shoulder bolt at that position.
4. Replace and tighten the thumbwheels at both sides of the crossbar by turning them clockwise until tight.

Make sure to check that the thumbwheels are tight each time load is added or removed from the roof rack, and periodically while traveling. Make sure that the load is secure before traveling.

Towing

TOWING POINTS

Front Towing Point



E241979

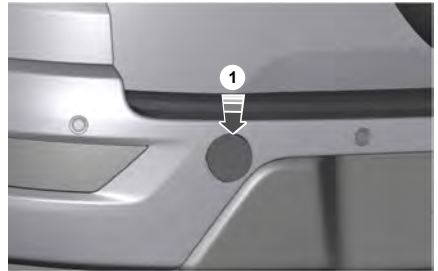
1. Push the cover.
2. Release the cover.



E241980

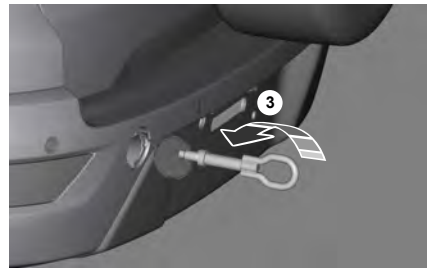
3. Install the recovery hook.

Rear Towing Point (If Equipped)



E241981

1. Push the cover.
2. Release the cover.



E241982

3. Install the recovery hook.

The recovery hook may be in the following locations:

- Inside temporary mobility kit.
- Inside Jack and tools storage tray.

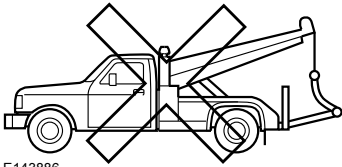
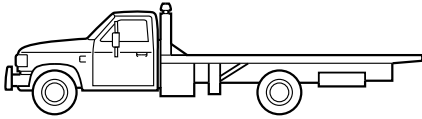
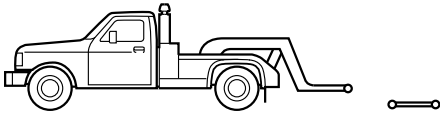
You must carry the recovery hook in your vehicle at all times.

Note: The recovery hook has a left-hand thread. Turn it counterclockwise to install it and make sure that it is fully tightened. Failure to do so could result in the recovery hook becoming loose.

Note: If your vehicle has a tow bar, use this to tow other vehicles.

Towing

TRANSPORTING THE VEHICLE



E143886

If you need to have your vehicle towed, contact a professional towing service or, if you are a member of a roadside assistance program, your roadside assistance service provider.

We recommend towing your vehicle with a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. Do not tow with a slingbelt. Ford Motor Company has not approved a slingbelt towing procedure.








It is acceptable to tow a front-wheel drive vehicle from the front if using proper wheel lift equipment to raise the front wheels off the ground. When towing in this manner, the rear wheels can remain on the ground.

Front-wheel drive vehicles must have the front wheels placed on a two-wheel tow dolly when towing your vehicle from the rear using wheel lift equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission.

Towing a four-wheel drive vehicle requires that all wheels be off the ground, such as using a wheel lift and dollies or flatbed equipment. This prevents damage to the transmission, four-wheel drive system and vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS

-  You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.
-  You must make sure the transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.
-  The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and allow for increased stopping distances and heavier steering. Failure to take care may lead to a crash or personal injury.
-  If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock, make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position before you tow.
-  Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.
-  Do not tow your vehicle if the ambient temperature is below 0°C.
-  Do not tow your vehicle backward.

Towing

Emergency Towing

If your vehicle is disabled without access to wheel dollies, a car-hauling trailer, or a flatbed transport vehicle it can be flat-towed with all wheels on the ground. You may do this under the following conditions:

- Your vehicle is facing forward so that it is towed in a forward direction.
- The transmission selector lever is placed in position **N**. If the transmission gear shift lever cannot be moved to position **N**, it may need to be overridden. See **Transmission** (page 100).
- Maximum speed is 50 km/h.
- Maximum distance is 80 km.

Note: *If you need to exceed a speed of 50 km/h and a distance of 80 km while towing, you must lift the drive wheels clear of the ground.*

Note: *We recommend you do not tow with the drive wheels on the ground. However, if it is required to move the vehicle from a dangerous location, do not tow your vehicle faster than 50 km/h or farther than 80 km.*

WARNING



In the event of a mechanical failure of the transmission, do not use individual axle carriers. All wheels must be lifted clear of the ground on a level platform.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle that is being towed.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 123).

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

Note: *Using a rigid towing bar is the safest way to tow a vehicle.*

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

TOWING THE VEHICLE ON FOUR WHEELS - MANUAL TRANSMISSION

WARNINGS



You must switch the ignition on when your vehicle is being towed. Failure to follow this warning could seriously increase the risk of injury or death.



The brake and steering assistance will not operate unless the engine is running. Press the brake pedal harder and be aware of increased stopping distances and heavier steering.



If your vehicle has a steering wheel lock make sure the ignition is in the accessory or on position when being towed.



Too much tension on a tow rope could cause damage to your vehicle or the vehicle that is towing.



When towing your vehicle you must select neutral. Failure to follow this warning could damage the transmission and may lead to a crash or injury.

Drive off slowly and smoothly without jerking the vehicle you are towing.

You must only use the towing eye that was delivered with your vehicle. See **Towing Points** (page 123).

Towing

Tow ropes or rigid towing bars must be placed on the same side. For example; right hand rear towing point to right hand front towing point.

You must use a tow rope or rigid towing bar that is of the correct strength for the weight of the towing vehicle and the vehicle that is being towed.

The weight of the vehicle that is being towed must not exceed the weight of the towing vehicle.

Do not exceed 50 km/h. See **Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels** (page 125).

Driving Hints

BREAKING-IN

Tires

Note: New tires need to be run-in for approximately 500 km. During this time, you may experience different driving characteristics.

Brakes and Clutch

Note: If possible, avoid heavy braking and clutching during the first 150 km in the city, and the first 1,500 km in highways.

COLD WEATHER PRECAUTIONS

The functional operation of some components and systems can be affected at temperatures below -10°C.

DRIVING THROUGH WATER

WARNING

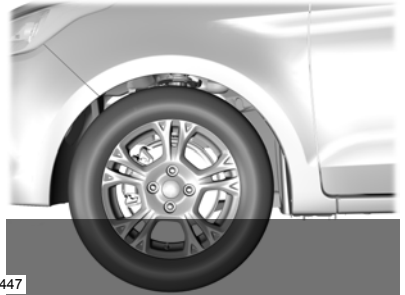


Do not drive through flowing or deep water as you may lose control of your vehicle.

Note: Driving through standing water can cause vehicle damage.

Note: Engine damage can occur if water enters the air filter.

Before driving through standing water, check the depth. Never drive through water that is higher than the bottom of the front rocker area of your vehicle.



E266447

When driving through standing water, drive very slowly and do not stop your vehicle. Your brake performance and traction may be limited. After driving through water and as soon as it is safe to do so:

- Lightly press the brake pedal to dry the brakes and to check that they work.
- Check that the horn works.
- Check that the exterior lights work.
- Turn the steering wheel to check that the steering power assist works.

FLOOR MATS



E142666

Always use floor mats that are designed to fit the footwell of your vehicle. Only use floor mats that are firmly secured to retention posts.

Driving Hints

WARNING



Make sure that the floor mat is secured properly using the appropriate fixings, and do not position the floor mat so that it interferes with the operation of the pedals.

Pedals that cannot move freely can cause loss of vehicle control and increase the risk of serious personal injury.

Always make sure that the floor mats are properly attached to the retention posts in the carpet that are supplied with your vehicle. Floor mats must be properly secured to both retention posts to ensure mats do not shift out of position.

Never place floor mats or any other covering in the vehicle footwell that cannot be properly secured to prevent them from moving and interfering with the pedals or the ability to control the vehicle.

Never place floor mats or any other covering on top of already installed floor mats. Floor mats should always rest on top of the vehicle carpeting surface and not another floor mat or other covering. Additional floor mats or any other covering will reduce the pedal clearance and potentially interfere with pedal operation.

Check attachment of floor mats on a regular basis. Always properly reinstall and secure floor mats that have been removed for cleaning or replacement.

Failure to properly follow floor mat installation or attachment instructions can potentially cause interference with pedal operation causing loss of control of vehicle.

1. To install floor mats, position the floor mat so that the eyelets are over the retention posts and press down to lock the floor mat in.
2. To remove the floor mat, place your hands under the floor mat by the eyelets and pull upward.

Roadside Emergencies

HAZARD FLASHERS



The hazard warning button is located on the instrument panel.

Use it when your vehicle is creating a safety hazard for other motorists.

Press the button to turn on the hazard warning function, and the front and rear direction indicators will flash.

Press the button again to turn them off.

Note: *If used when the engine is not running, the battery will lose charge. There may be insufficient power to restart your engine.*

Note: *Depending on applicable laws and regulations in the country for which your vehicle was originally built, the hazard warning flashers may flash if you brake heavily.*

WARNING TRIANGLE

Space is provided in the luggage compartment.

FUEL SHUTOFF

WARNING



If your vehicle has been involved in a crash, have the fuel system checked. Failure to follow this instruction could result in fire, personal injury or death.

In the event of a moderate to severe collision, this vehicle includes a fuel pump shutoff feature that stops the flow of fuel to the engine. Not every impact will cause a shutoff.

Should your vehicle shut off after a collision, you may restart your vehicle. For vehicles equipped with a key system:

1. Switch off the ignition.
2. Switch to start position.
3. Switch off the ignition.
4. Switch on the ignition to re-enable the fuel pump.

For vehicles equipped with a push button start system:

1. Press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
2. Press the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch on the ignition.
3. Remove your foot from the brake pedal and press the **START/STOP** button to switch off the ignition.
4. You can either attempt to start the engine by pressing the brake pedal and the **START/STOP** button, or switch on the ignition only by pressing the **START/STOP** button without pressing the brake pedal. Both ways re-enable the fuel system.

Note: *When you try to restart your vehicle after a fuel shutoff, the vehicle makes sure that various systems are safe to restart. Once your vehicle determines that the systems are safe, then the vehicle will allow you to restart.*

Note: *In the event that your vehicle does not restart after your third attempt, contact an authorized dealer.*

Roadside Emergencies

JUMP STARTING THE VEHICLE

WARNINGS



Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.



Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Do not attempt to push-start your automatic transmission vehicle. Automatic transmissions do not have push-start capability. Attempting to push-start a vehicle with an automatic transmission may cause transmission damage.

Preparing Your Vehicle

Note: Use only a 12-volt supply to start your vehicle.

Note: Do not disconnect the battery of the disabled vehicle as this could damage the vehicle's electrical system.

1. Park the booster vehicle close to the hood of the disabled vehicle making sure the two vehicles do not touch. Set the parking brake on both vehicles and stay clear of the engine cooling fan and other moving parts.

2. Check all battery terminals and remove any excessive corrosion before you attach the battery cables. Ensure that vent caps are tight and level.
3. Turn the heater fan on in both vehicles to protect from any electrical surges. Turn all other accessories off.

Connecting the Jumper Cables

WARNINGS



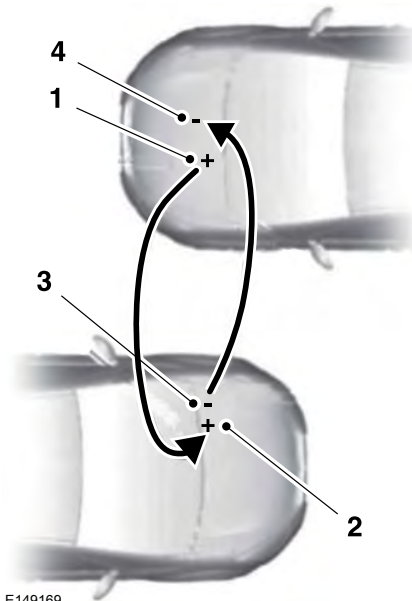
Do not use fuel lines, engine valve covers, windshield wiper arms, the intake manifold, or hood latch as ground points.



Use only adequately sized cables with insulated clamps.

Note: In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

Roadside Emergencies



E149169

1. Connect the positive (+) jumper cable to the positive (+) terminal of the discharged battery.
2. Connect the other end of the positive (+) cable to the positive (+) terminal of the assisting battery.
3. Connect the negative (-) cable to the negative (-) terminal of the assisting battery.
4. Make the final connection of the negative (-) cable to an exposed metal part of the stalled vehicle's engine, away from the battery and the carburetor or fuel injection system.

Note: Do not attach the negative (-) cable to fuel lines, engine rocker covers, the intake manifold or electrical components as grounding points.

WARNING



Do not connect the end of the second cable to the negative (-) terminal of the battery to be jumped. A spark may cause an explosion of the gases that surround the battery.

Ensure that the cables are clear of fan blades, belts, moving parts of both engines, or any fuel delivery system parts.

Jump Starting

1. Start the engine of the booster vehicle and run the engine at moderately increased speed.
2. Start the engine of the disabled vehicle.
3. Once the disabled vehicle has been started, run both engines for an additional three minutes before disconnecting the jumper cables.

Removing the Jumper Cables

Remove the jumper cables in the reverse order that they were connected.

Note: In the illustration, the vehicle on the bottom is used to designate the assisting (boosting) battery.

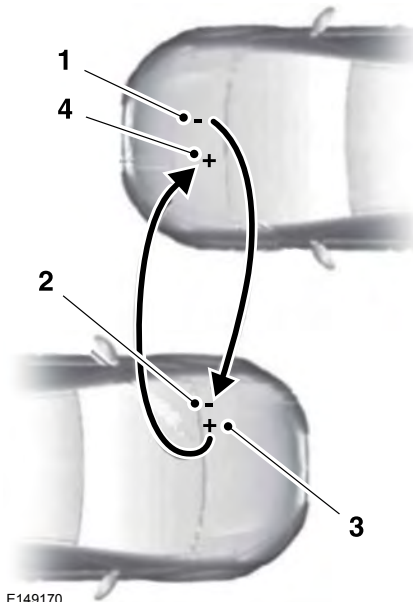
Roadside Emergencies

POST-CRASH ALERT SYSTEM

The system flashes the turn signal lamps and sounds the horn (intermittently) in the event of a serious impact that deploys an airbag (front, side, side curtain or Safety Canopy) or the seatbelt pretensioners.

The horn and lamps will turn off when:

- The hazard control button is pressed
- The panic button (if equipped) is pressed on the remote entry transmitter
- Your vehicle runs out of power



E149170

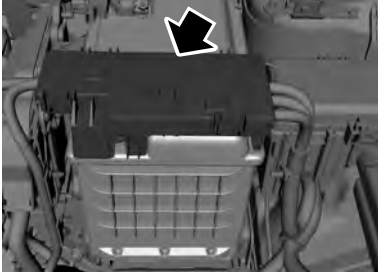
1. Remove the jumper cable from the ground metal surface.
2. Remove the jumper cable on the negative (-) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
3. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the booster vehicle's battery.
4. Remove the jumper cable from the positive (+) terminal of the disabled vehicle's battery.

After the disabled vehicle has been started and the jumper cables removed, allow it to idle for several minutes so the engine computer can relearn its idle conditions.

Fuses

FUSE BOX LOCATIONS

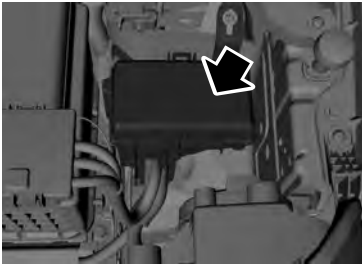
Battery Fuse Box



E246704

This fuse box is attached to the battery positive terminal.

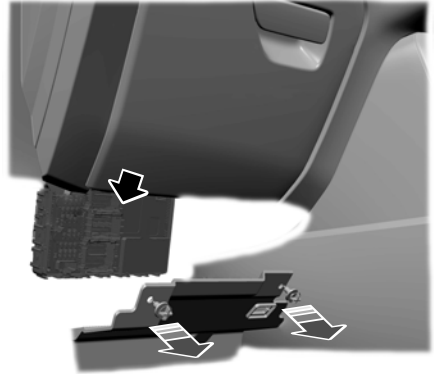
Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E246703

This fuse box is located in the engine compartment.

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E263693



This fuse box is located behind the glove box. To access the fuse box, do the following:

1. Unattach and remove the plastic cover.

Note: Any improper modification to the electrical system can compromise the safety of the vehicle, implying risk of fire or engine damage. For any clarifications or questions, contact a Ford Distributor.

FUSE SPECIFICATION CHART

WARNINGS

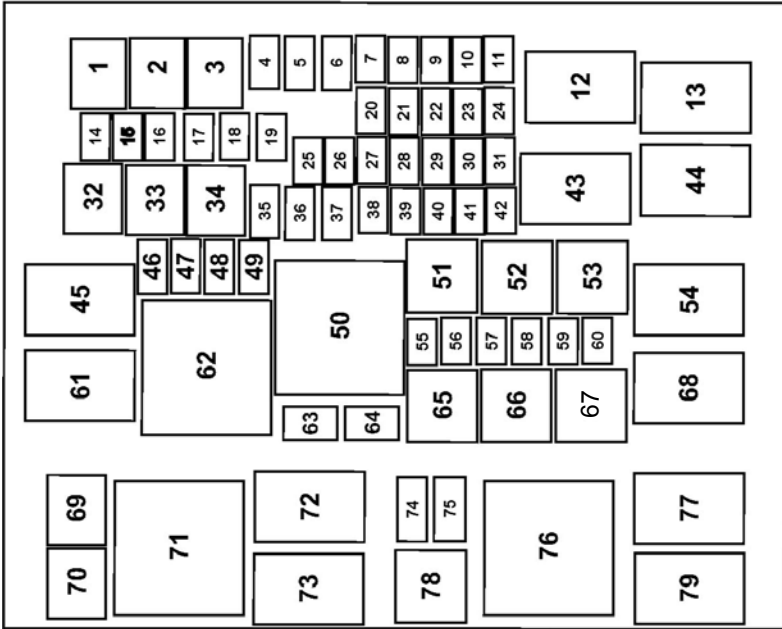
-  Always disconnect the battery before servicing high current fuses.
-  To reduce risk of electrical shock, always replace the cover to the power distribution box before reconnecting the battery or refilling fluid reservoirs.

Fuses

Your vehicle may not be equipped with all of the features listed in the fusing tables.

This information describes all fusing for all available vehicle models.

Engine Compartment Fuse Box



E245746

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	60A	Engine cooling fan 2 relay.
2	50A	Engine cooling fan 1 relay.
3	60A	Glow plug relay (Diesel).
4	20A 40A	ABS valves. ABS with electronic stability program valves.
5	20A	Steering column lock relay.

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
6	40A	Front blower motor relay.
7	10A	Brake on/off switch.
8	20A	Moonroof.
9	15A	Rear washer relay. Front wiper motor relay coil.
10	7.5A	A/C clutch relay.
11	5A	Power point relay coil. Horn relay coil. Fuel pump relay coil.
14	-	Not used.
15	5A	Rain sensor. Rear washer relay coil.
16	10A	Rear window wiper motor.
17	20A	Front power point / Cigar lighter.
18	20A	Rear power point.
19	-	Not used.
20	20A	Powertrain control module.
21	15A	Oxygen sensor heater. Catalyst monitor sensor. Canister purge valve. Variable camshaft timing solenoid valves.
21	5A	Temperature / Mass air flow sensor (Diesel). Volume control valve - fuel metering unit (Diesel).
22	10A	Engine cooling Fan 1 relay coil. Engine cooling Fan 2 relay coil. A/C Clutch relay coil. Variable A/C compressor valve. Variable oil pump control. Vacuum brake solenoid (1.5L). Electronic vacuum regulator valve (1.0L). Puller fan relay coil (1.0L). Run/On water pump (1.0L).

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
22	5A	Engine cooling fan 1 relay coil (Diesel). Engine cooling fan 2 relay coil (Diesel). A/C clutch relay coil (Diesel). Water in fuel sensor (Diesel). Exhaust gas recirculation bypass solenoid (Diesel). Glow plug relay coil (Diesel).
23	20A	Ignition coils.
24	10A	Port fuel Injectors – PFI (1.5L).
25	-	Not used.
26	-	Not used.
27	-	Not used.
28	10A	Left horn.
29	10A	Right horn.
30	5A	Front wiper motor relay coil (Low Content vehicle only). ¹
31	-	Not used.
32	30A	Body control module battery power.
33	40A 60A	ABS pump. ABS with electronic stability program pump.
34	-	Not used.
35	40A	Heated backlite relay.
36	30A	Starter relay.
37	-	Not used.
38	20A	Left low beam high intensity discharge lamp relay. ²
39	20A	Right low beam high intensity discharge lamp relay. ²
40	-	Not used.
41	-	Not used.

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
42	7.5A	Puller fan relay (1.0L).
46	-	Not used.
47	20A	Fuel pump relay.
48	30A	Passenger door control module.
49	20A	Fuel heater relay (Diesel).
55	10A	Headlamp leveling.
56	5A	Electronic power steering module. Powertrain control module.
57	10A	Fuel heater relay coil (Diesel).
58	10A	Rear view camera.
59	5A	ABS module.
60	5A	Heated backlite relay coil.
63	25A	Front wiper motor.
64	30A	Body control module - run/start bus.
69	-	Not used.
70	-	Not used.
74	-	Not used.
75	-	Not used.

¹Applicable only for low entry level catalogues.

²Some vehicles even not equipped with High Intensity Discharge Lamps may have fuses and relays for Low Beam.

Relay	Circuits switched
12	Powertrain control module.
13	Starter relay.
43	Power point relay.
44	Front wiper motor relay.
45	Front blower relay.

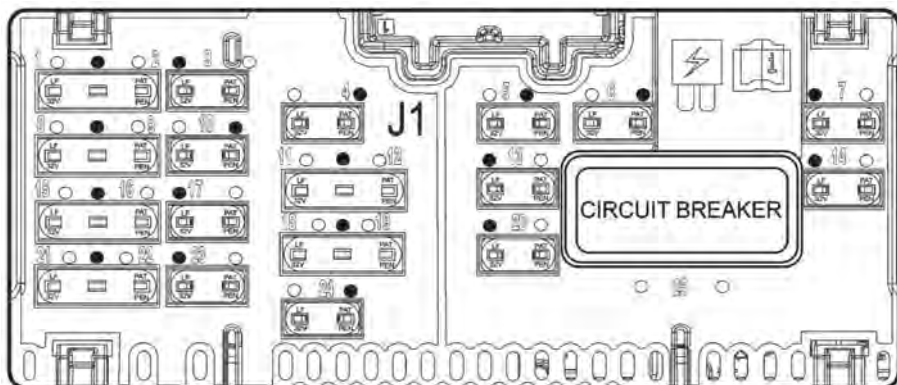
Fuses

Relay	Circuits switched
50	Run/Start relay.
51	Steering column lock relay.
52	Horn relay.
53	Left low beam high intensity discharge lamp relay. ²
54	Rear washer relay.
61	Heated backlite relay. Diversity antenna.
62	Engine cooling fan 2 relay.
65	Fuel pump relay. Fuel heater relay (Diesel).
66	Right low beam high intensity discharge lamp relay. ²
67	A/C clutch relay.
68	Engine cooling fan 1 relay.
71	Glow plug relay (Diesel).
72	Not used.
73	Not used.
76	Not used.
77	Puller fan relay.
78	Not used.
79	Not used.

²Some vehicles even not equipped with High Intensity Discharge Lamps may have fuses and relays for low beam.

Fuses

Passenger Compartment Fuse Box



E260287

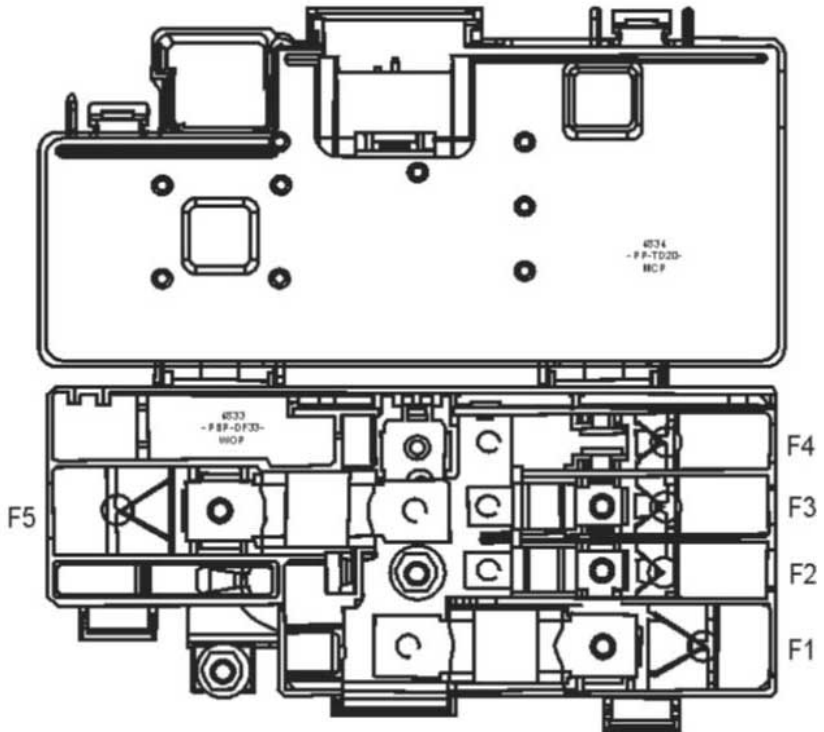
Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F01	5A	Restraints Control Module.
F02	5A	Humidity and incar temperature sensor.
F03	10A	Reverse parking aid module.
F04	10A	Ignition switch. Push start switch. Key in switch.
F05	20A	Central lock relay (BCM internal relay). Central unlock relay (BCM internal relay).
F06	10A	Ultra low cost Radio. Driver and passenger power window switch illumination. Driver power window switch delayed. Accessory (One Touch Up/Down only). Moonroof.
F07	30A	Driver door control module.
F08	-	Not used.
F09	5A	Electrochromic inside mirror. Transmission control switch.

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
F10	10A	On board diagnostic connector.
F11	-	Not used.
F12	-	Not used.
F13	15A	Driver unlock relay (BCM internal relay). Double lock relay (BCM internal relay). Fuel flap unlock (BCM internal relay).
F14	30A	Driver power window switch power (One Touch Up/Down only).
F15	-	Not used.
F16	-	Not used.
F17	15A	SYNC. Electronic finish panel.
F18	-	Not used.
F19	-	Not used.
F20	-	Not used.
F21	7.5A	Climate control module.
F22	7.5A	Smart data link connector – logic. Steering column control module. Instrument cluster.
F23	20A	Audio control module.
F24	20A	Not used.
F25	30A	Power window motors. Driver power window switch power (w/o One Touch Up/Down).

Fuses

Battery Fuse Box



E245747

Fuses

Fuse	Fuse amp rating	Protected components
1	250A	Engine compartment fuse box.
2	60A	Electronic power steering module.
3	100A	Body control module.
4	-	Not used.
5	275A	Starter.

CHANGING A FUSE

Fuses

WARNING



Always replace a fuse with one that has the specified amperage rating. Using a fuse with a higher amperage rating can cause severe wire damage and could start a fire.

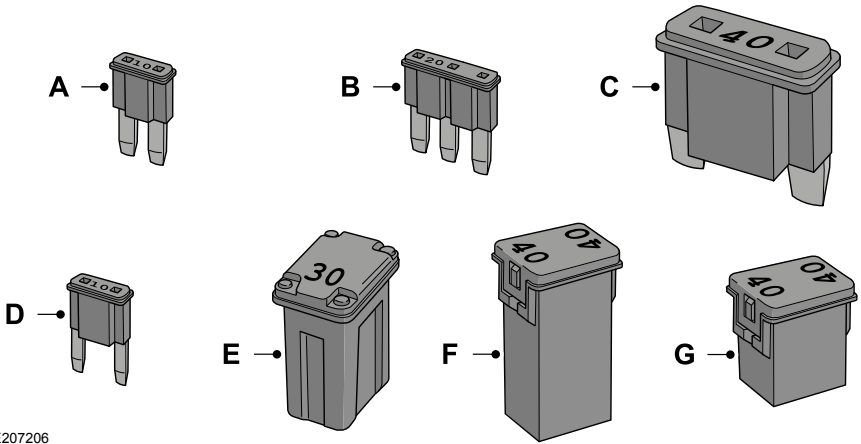


E217331

If electrical components in the vehicle are not working, a fuse may have blown. Blown fuses are identified by a broken wire within the fuse. Check the appropriate fuses before replacing any electrical components.

Fuses

Fuse Types



E207206

Callout	Fuse Type
A	Micro 2
B	Micro 3
C	Maxi
D	Mini
E	M Case
F	J Case
G	J Case Low Profile

Maintenance

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNINGS



Do not work on a hot engine.



Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.



Do not touch the electronic ignition system parts after you have switched the ignition on or when the engine is running. The system operates at high voltage. Failure to adhere to this warning could result in serious personal injury or death.



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. See **Engine Cooling Fan** (page 149).

Make sure that you fit filler caps securely after carrying out maintenance checks.

We recommend that you carry out the following checks.

Check Daily

- Exterior lamps.
- Interior lamps.
- Warning lamps and indicators.

Check When Refueling

- Washer fluid level. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).
- Tire pressures.
- Tire condition. See **Wheels and Tires** (page 171).

Check Monthly

- Engine oil level. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 148).
- Engine coolant level. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 149).

- Brake fluid level. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 150).
- Pipes, hoses and reservoirs for leaks.
- Air conditioning operation.
- Parking brake operation.
- Horn operation.
- Tightness of lug nuts. See **Lug Nuts** (page 182).

OPENING AND CLOSING THE HOOD

Opening the Hood



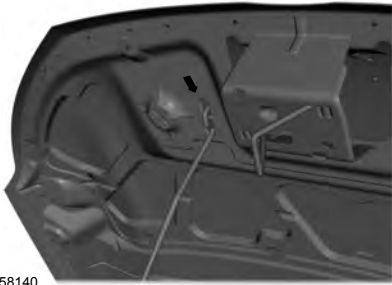
E102165



E154746

Move the catch to the right.

Maintenance



E158140

Open the hood and support it with the hood prop rod. Attach the prop rod to the hood, the correct location is indicated by an arrow.

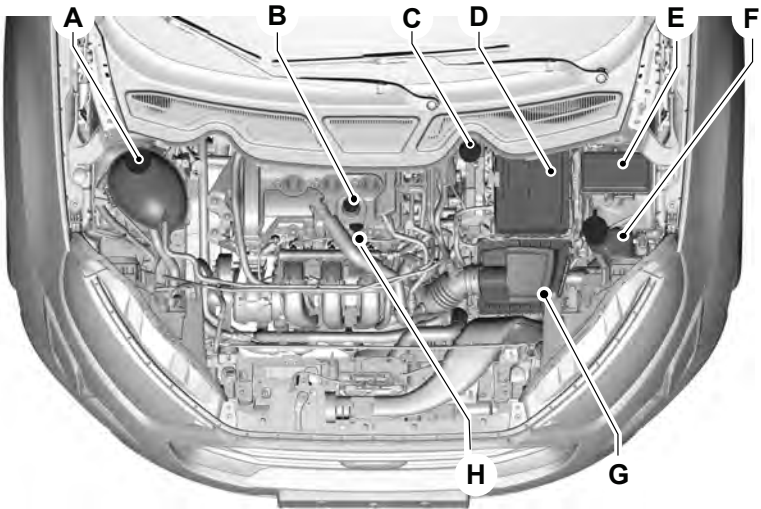
Closing the Hood

Note: You must secure the hood prop correctly after use.

Note: Make sure that the hood is closed properly.

Lower the hood and allow it to drop from under its own weight for the last 20-30 centimeters.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L



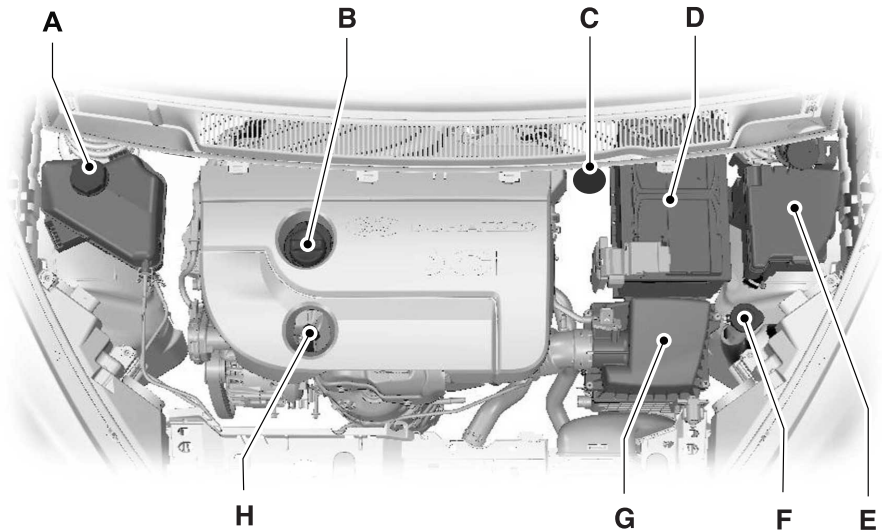
E246491

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 149).
- B Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 148).
- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 150).

Maintenance

- D Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 133).
- F Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).
- G Air cleaner. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 165).
- H Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 148).

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL



E156627

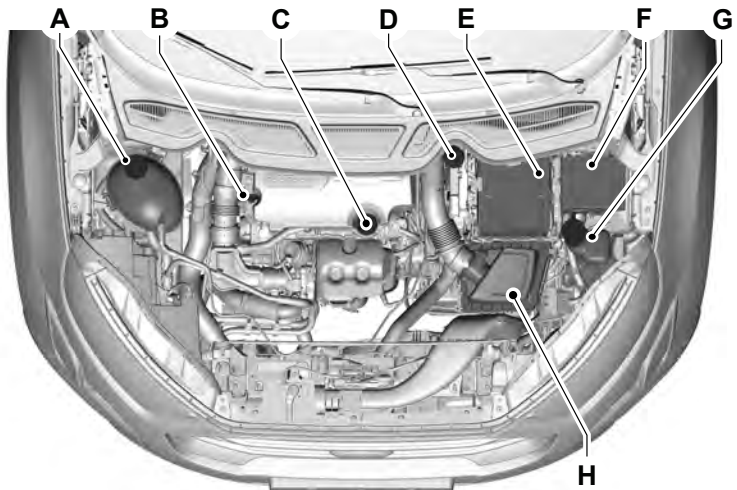
- A Engine coolant reservoir*: See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 149).
- B Engine oil filler cap*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 148).
- C Brake and clutch fluid reservoir (left-hand drive)*: See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 150).
- D Battery: See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).
- E Engine compartment fuse box. See **Fuses** (page 133).

Maintenance

- F Windshield and rear window washer fluid reservoir: See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).
- G Air Filter: See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 165).
- H Engine oil dipstick*: See **Engine Oil Check** (page 148).

* The filler caps and the engine oil dipstick are colored for easy identification.

UNDER HOOD OVERVIEW - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

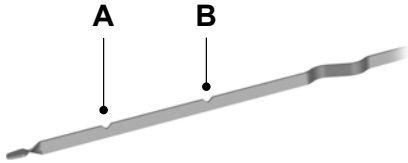


E246490

- A Engine coolant reservoir. See **Engine Coolant Check** (page 149).
- B Engine oil dipstick. See **Engine Oil Dipstick** (page 148).
- C Engine oil filler cap. See **Engine Oil Check** (page 148).
- D Brake fluid reservoir. See **Brake and Clutch Fluid Check** (page 150).
- E Battery. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).
- F Power distribution box. See **Fuses** (page 133).
- G Washer system fluid reservoir. See **Washer Fluid Check** (page 151).
- H Air filter assembly. See **Changing the Engine Air Filter** (page 165).

Maintenance

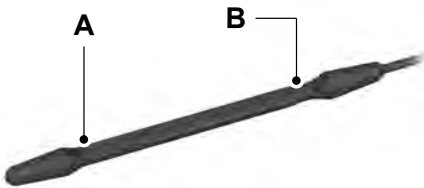
ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.0L ECOBOOST™/1.5L



E141337

- A Minimum.
- B Maximum.

ENGINE OIL DIPSTICK - 1.5L DURATORQ-TDCI DIESEL



E140423

- A Minimum
- B Maximum

ENGINE OIL CHECK

1. Make sure that your vehicle is on level ground.
2. Check the oil level before starting the engine, or switch the engine off and wait 10 minutes for the oil to drain into the oil pan.

3. Remove the dipstick and wipe it with a clean, lint-free cloth. Replace the dipstick and remove it again to check the oil level.


If the oil level is at the minimum mark, immediately add oil.


Note: Make sure that the oil level is between the minimum and the maximum marks.

Note: The oil consumption of new engines reaches its normal level after approximately 5,000 km.

Adding Engine Oil

WARNINGS

 Do not add engine oil when the engine is hot. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

 Do not remove the filler cap when the engine is running.

Do not use supplemental engine oil additives because they are unnecessary and could lead to engine damage that may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.

1. Clean the area surrounding the engine oil filler cap before you remove it.
2. Remove the engine oil filler cap.
3. Add engine oil that meets Ford specifications. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 183).
4. Replace the engine oil filler cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

Note: Do not add oil further than the maximum mark. Oil levels above the maximum mark may cause engine damage.

Note: Immediately soak up any oil spillage with an absorbent cloth.

Maintenance

ENGINE COOLING FAN

WARNING



Keep your hands and clothing clear of the engine cooling fan.

Under certain conditions, the engine cooling fan may continue to run for several minutes after you switch your vehicle off. This could happen in low ambient temperatures and independent of the engine coolant temperature, for example short journeys or low coolant temperature.

ENGINE COOLANT CHECK

WARNINGS



Do not dispose of coolant in the household refuse or the public sewage system. Use an authorized waste disposal facility.



Do not put coolant in the windshield washer reservoir. If sprayed on the windshield, coolant could make it difficult to see through the windshield.



E170684

Make sure that the coolant level is between the **MIN** and **MAX** marks on the coolant reservoir. If the coolant level is at or below the minimum mark, immediately add coolant.

The coolant concentration should be maintained within 48% to 50%, which equates to a freeze point between -30°F (-34°C) and -34°F (-37°C).

Note: *Coolant expands when it is hot. The level may extend beyond the **MAX** mark.*

Note: *Do not use stop leak pellets, cooling system sealants, or non-specified additives as they can cause damage to the engine cooling or heating systems.*

Adding Coolant

WARNINGS



Do not remove the coolant reservoir cap when the cooling system is hot. Wait 10 minutes for the cooling system to cool down. Cover the coolant reservoir cap with a thick cloth to prevent the possibility of scalding and slowly remove the cap. Failure to follow this instruction could result in personal injury.

Maintenance

WARNINGS



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your physician.



Undiluted coolant is flammable and may ignite if spilled on a hot exhaust.

We do not recommend the use of recycled engine coolant since a Ford-approved recycling process is not yet available.

Do not mix different colors or types of coolant in your vehicle.

Note: Add a 50/50 mixture of antifreeze and water or prediluted engine coolant that meets the correct specification.

Note: Use fluids which meet the specifications or requirements defined. Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by the vehicle Warranty. See **Capacities and Specifications** (page 183).

To top up the coolant level do the following:

1. Remove the coolant reservoir cap.
2. Add coolant to the **MAX** mark, do not overfill.
3. Replace the coolant reservoir cap. Turn it clockwise until you feel a strong resistance.

In case of emergency, you can add water without engine coolant in order to reach a vehicle service location.

Note: Prolonged use of an incorrect dilution of coolant can cause damage, for example corrosion, overheating or freezing.

BRAKE AND CLUTCH FLUID CHECK

WARNINGS



Use of any fluid other than the recommended brake fluid may reduce brake efficiency and not meet Ford's performance standards.



Do not allow the fluid to touch your skin or eyes. If this happens, rinse the affected areas immediately with plenty of water and contact your doctor.



Clean the filler cap before removing. Use only fluid that meets Ford specifications and from a sealed container.

Note: Keep brake fluid clean and dry. Contamination with dirt, water, petroleum products or other materials may result in brake system damage and possible failure.

Note: The brake and the clutch systems are supplied from the same reservoir.

The fluid level will drop slowly as the brakes wear, and will rise when the brake components are replaced.

Fluid levels between the MIN and MAX lines are within the normal operating range; there is no need to add fluid.

If the fluid levels are outside of the normal operating range, the performance of the system could be compromised; seek service from you authorized dealer immediately.

Top up with fluid that meets the Ford specification.

Maintenance


WASHER FLUID CHECK


When adding fluid, use a mixture of washer fluid and water to help prevent freezing and improve the cleaning capability. For information on fluid dilution follow the manufacturer's instructions.


Note: *The reservoir supplies the front and rear washer systems.*


CHANGING THE 12V BATTERY

WARNINGS


 Batteries normally produce explosive gases which can cause personal injury. Therefore, do not allow flames, sparks or lighted substances to come near the battery. When working near the battery, always shield your face and protect your eyes. Always provide correct ventilation.


 When lifting a plastic-cased battery, excessive pressure on the end walls could cause acid to flow through the vent caps, resulting in personal injury and damage to the vehicle or battery. Lift the battery with a battery carrier or with your hands on opposite corners.

 Keep batteries out of reach of children. Batteries contain sulfuric acid. Avoid contact with skin, eyes or clothing. Shield your eyes when working near the battery to protect against possible splashing of acid solution. In case of acid contact with skin or eyes, flush immediately with water for a minimum of 15 minutes and get prompt medical attention. If acid is swallowed, call a physician immediately.

 Battery posts, terminals and related accessories contain lead and lead compounds. Wash hands after handling.

WARNINGS

 This vehicle may have more than one battery. Removing the battery cables from only one battery does not disconnect your vehicle electrical system. Make sure you disconnect the battery cables from all batteries when disconnecting power. Failure to do so may cause serious personal injury or property damage.

 For vehicles with Auto-Start-Stop the battery requirement is different. You must replace the battery with one of exactly the same specification.

The battery is located in the engine compartment. See **Changing the 12V Battery** (page 151).

Your vehicle has a maintenance-free battery. It does not require additional water during service.

If your vehicle battery has a cover, make sure you correctly install it after cleaning or replacing the battery.

For longer, trouble-free operation, keep the top of the battery clean and dry and the battery cables tightly fastened to the battery terminals. If any corrosion is present on the battery or terminals, remove the cables from the terminals and clean with a wire brush. You can neutralize the acid with a solution of baking soda and water.

We recommend that you disconnect the negative battery cable terminal from the battery if you plan to store your vehicle for an extended period.

Maintenance

To maintain correct operation of the battery management system, if you add any electrical devices to your vehicle, do not connect the ground connection directly to the negative battery terminal. A connection at the negative battery terminal can cause inaccurate measurements of the battery condition and potential incorrect system operation.

Note: *Electrical accessories or components added to your vehicle by you or an authorized dealer, may adversely affect battery performance, durability and the performance of other electrical systems on your vehicle.*

If a replacement battery is required, we recommend you use a Ford replacement battery that matches the electrical requirements of your vehicle.

If you disconnect or replace the battery and your vehicle has an automatic transmission, transmission must relearn its adaptive strategy. Because of this, the transmission may shift firmly when first driven. This is normal operation while the transmission fully updates its operation to optimum shift feel.

Remove and Reinstall the Battery

To disconnect or remove the battery, do the following:

1. Apply the parking brake and switch the ignition off.
2. Switch all electrical equipment off, for example lights and radio.
3. Wait a minimum of two minutes before disconnecting the battery.

Note: *The engine management system has a power hold function and remains powered for a period after you switch the ignition off. This is to allow diagnostic and adaptive tables to be stored. Disconnecting the battery without waiting can cause damage not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

4. Disconnect the negative (-) battery cable terminal first.
5. Disconnect the positive (+) battery cable terminal last.
6. Remove the battery securing clamp.
7. Remove the battery.
8. Install in the reverse order.

Note: *Before reconnecting the battery, make sure the ignition remains switched off.*

Note: *If you only disconnect the negative battery cable terminal, make sure it is isolated or placed away from the battery terminal to avoid un-intended connection or arcing.*

Note: *Make sure the battery cable terminals are fully tightened.*

Note: *If you disconnect or replace the battery, you must reset the clock and the pre-set radio stations once the battery is reconnected.*

Battery Disposal



Make sure that you dispose of old batteries in an environmentally friendly way. Seek advice from your local authority about recycling old batteries.

CHECKING THE WIPER BLADES



E142463

Run the tip of your fingers over the edge of the blade to check for roughness.

Maintenance

Clean the wiper blades with washer fluid or water applied with a soft sponge or cloth.

CHANGING THE WIPER BLADES

Changing the Windshield Wiper Blades

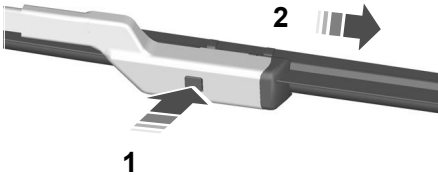
Note: The windshield wiper blades are different in length.

Note: If you install wiper blades of the wrong length, the wiper blades can clash damaging the wiper system.



E170913

1. Pull the wiper blade and arm away from the glass.



E72899

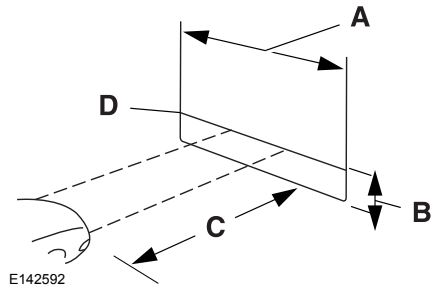
2. Press and hold the locking button.
3. Remove the wiper blade.
4. Install in the reverse order.

Note: Make sure that the wiper blade locks into place.

ADJUSTING THE HEADLAMPS

Vertical Aim Adjustment

The headlamps on your vehicle are properly aimed at the assembly plant. If your vehicle has been in an accident, the alignment of your headlamps should be checked by your authorized dealer.



- A 8 feet (2.4 meters)
- B Center height of lamp to ground
- C 25 feet (7.6 meters)
- D Horizontal reference line

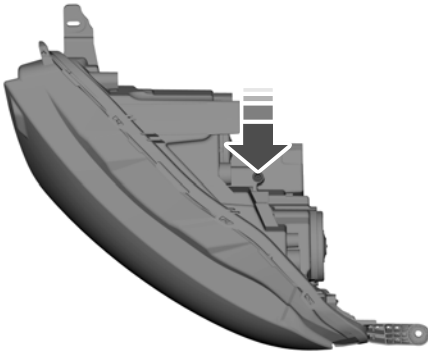
Vehicles With Halogen Headlamps

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

Maintenance

Note: To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.
4. On the wall or screen you will observe a flat zone of high intensity light located at the top of the right hand portion of the beam pattern. If the top edge of the high intensity light zone is not at the horizontal reference line, the headlamp will need to be adjusted.



E257560

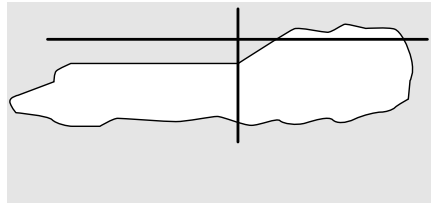
5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp. The horizontal edge of the brighter light should touch the horizontal reference line.
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

Vehicles With High Intensity Discharge Headlamps

1. Park the vehicle directly in front of a wall or screen on a level surface, approximately 25 feet (7.6 meters) away.
2. Measure the height of the headlamp bulb center from the ground and mark an 8 foot (2.4 meter) horizontal reference line on the vertical wall or screen at this height.

Note: To see a clearer light pattern for adjusting, you may want to block the light from one headlamp while adjusting the other.

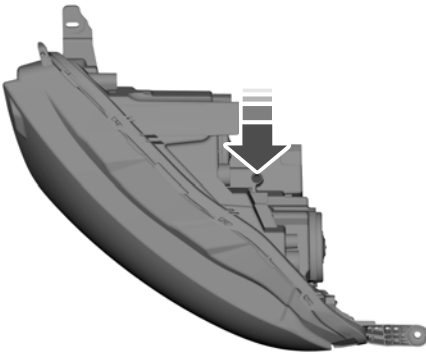
3. Turn on the low beam headlamps to illuminate the wall or screen and open the hood.



E142466

4. There is a distinct cut-off (change from light to dark) in the left portion of the beam pattern. The top edge of this cut-off should be positioned two inches (5 centimeters) below the horizontal reference line.

Maintenance



E257560

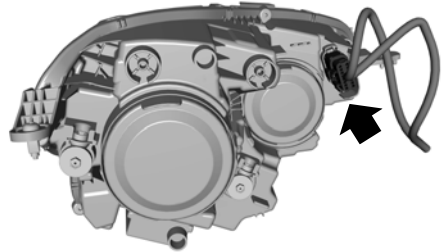
5. Locate the vertical adjuster on each headlamp. Using a Phillips #2 screwdriver, turn the adjuster either clockwise or counterclockwise in order to aim the headlamp.
6. Close the hood and turn off the lamps.

Horizontal Aim Adjustment

Horizontal aim is not required for this vehicle and is non-adjustable.

REMOVING A HEADLAMP

Open the hood. See **Opening and Closing the Hood** (page 144).



E246899

Disconnect the electrical connector.

Note: When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you reconnect the electrical connector correctly.

Note: When fitting the headlamp, make sure that you fully engage the headlamp in the lower fixing point.

CHANGING A BULB

Note: Switch the lights and the ignition off.

Note: Bulbs become hot when in use. Let them cool down before you remove them.

Note: Do not touch the bulb glass.

Note: Only fit bulbs of the correct specification.

Note: The following instructions describe how to remove the bulbs. Fit replacements in the reverse order unless otherwise stated.

Headlamp

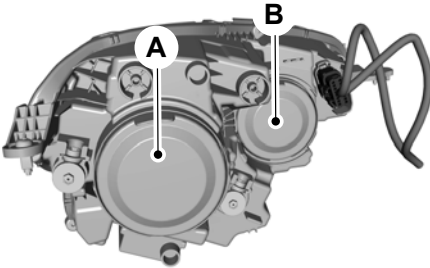
Note: Disconnect the bulb electrical connectors and remove the covers to gain access to the bulbs.

Maintenance

1. Open the hood.
2. Carefully remove the cover.
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

Headlamp Low Beam

Note: Do not touch the glass of the bulb.

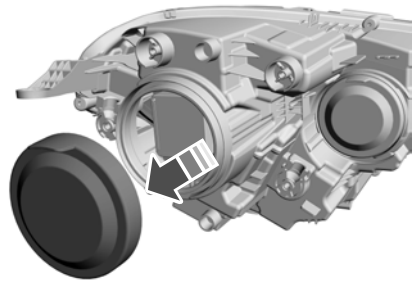


E246915

- A Headlamp low beam
- B Main beam.

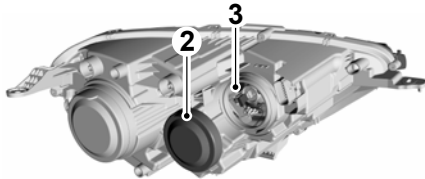
Headlamp Main Beam

Note: Do not touch the glass of the bulb.



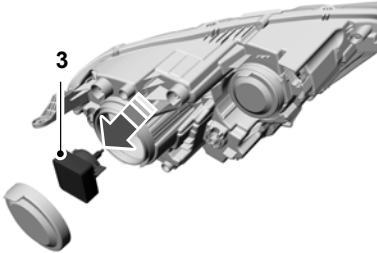
E246988

1. Open the hood.
2. Carefully remove the cover.



E247207

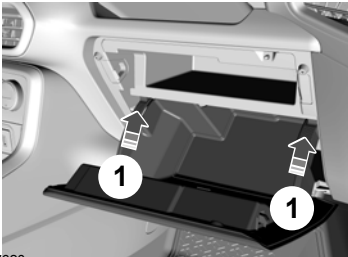
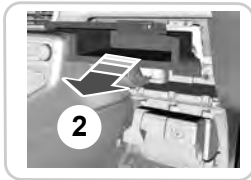
Maintenance



E246989

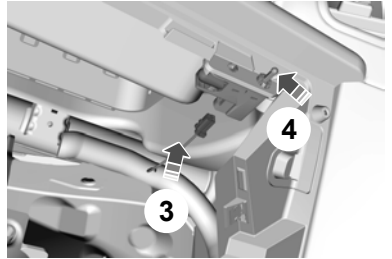
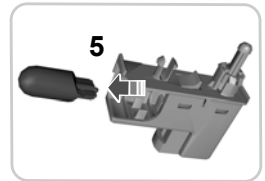
3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Release the clip and remove the bulb.

Glove box lamp (If Equipped)



E247620

1. Press the compartment.
2. Remove the box.



E247786

3. Disconnect the electrical connector.
4. Press the button.
5. Remove the bulb.

Front Fog Lamps (If Equipped)

Note: Do not separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.

Maintenance



E247556

Remove the fog bezel, as indicated.

Note: Use a soft tool to avoid any damage to the vehicle.



E247557

Loose and remove attachment screw.



E253456

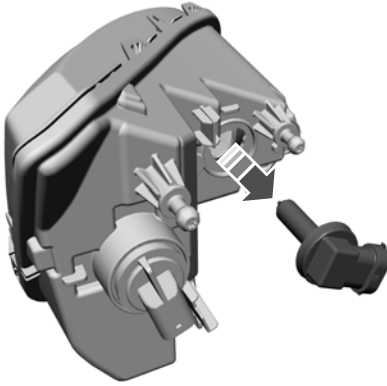
Put your fingers at the back of the fog as indicated and pull off the fog lamp.



E253457

Unplug bulb connector.

Maintenance



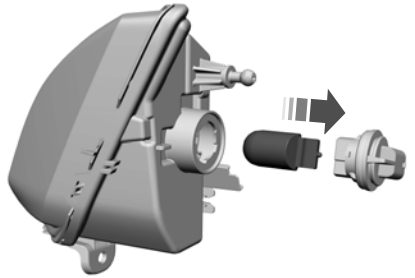
E247558

Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

Direction indicators

Note: Do not separate the fog lamp bulb from the bulb holder.

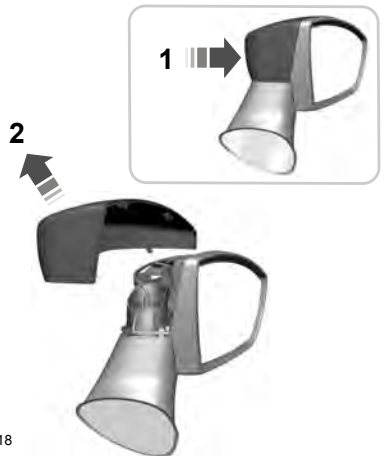
Use the same process to remove the fog and turn indicator Lamp.



E247616

Remove the turn indicator bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.

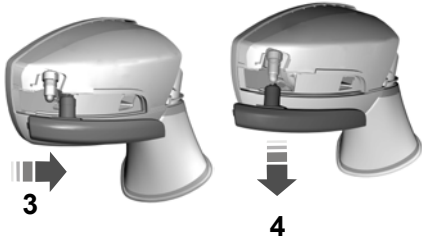
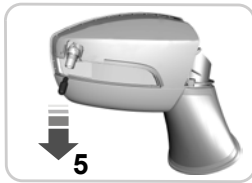
Side Repeater



E247618

1. Press the side of the cover to release the clips.
2. Remove the cover.

Maintenance



E247619

3. Move the cover that covers the lamp.
4. Remove the cap that covers the lamp.
5. Remove the bulb and bulb holder. Remove the bulb.

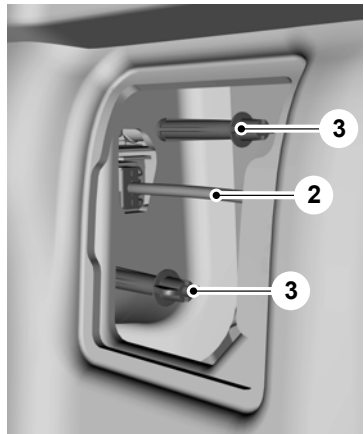
Rear lamps

Direction Indicator, Tail and Brake Lamp



E246932

1. Open the trim panel.

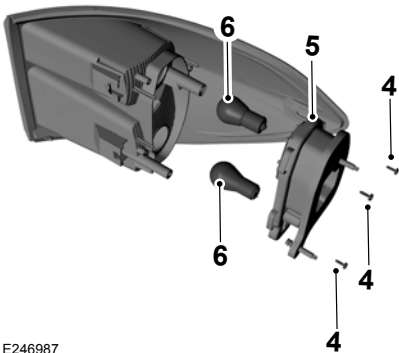


E246986

2. Disconnect the electrical connector.
3. Remove the wing nut.

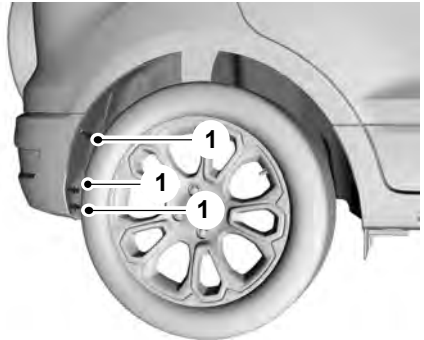
Maintenance

Reversing Lamp and Fog Lamp



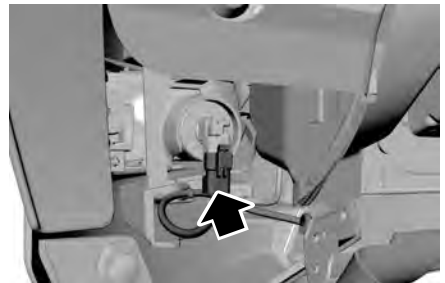
E246987

4. Remove the screws.
5. Remove the bulb holder.
6. Remove the lamp.
7. Gently press the bulb into the bulb holder, turn it anti-clockwise and remove it.



E247594

1. Remove wheel arch cover.



E246934

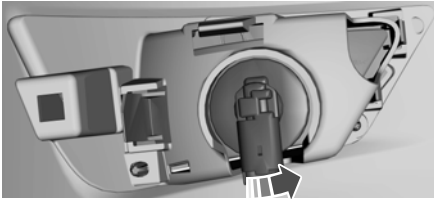
- Disconnect the electrical connector.

Maintenance

Central High Mounted Brake Lamp

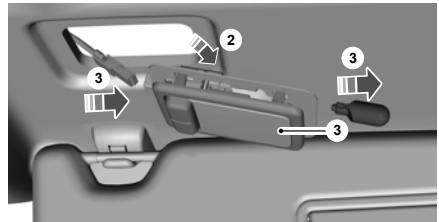
Note: On some vehicles the lamps are LED. They are not serviceable items, please consult a Ford Dealer if they fail.

Vanity lamp (If Equipped)



E246935

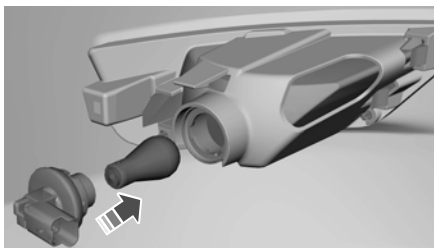
Turn the bulb holder anti-clockwise and remove the bulb holder from the housing.



E247617

1. Carefully release the spring clip.
2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb anti-clockwise and remove it.

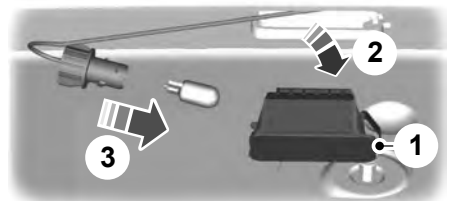
Number Plate Lamp (If Equipped)



E246985

Remove the bulb from the holder.

Gently press the new bulb into the bulb holder, install new bulb and holder into the housing, turning it clockwise.



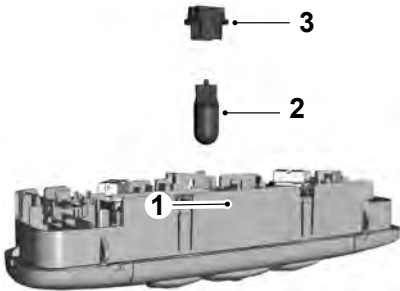
E72789

1. Carefully release the spring clip.

Maintenance

2. Remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb anti-clockwise and remove it.

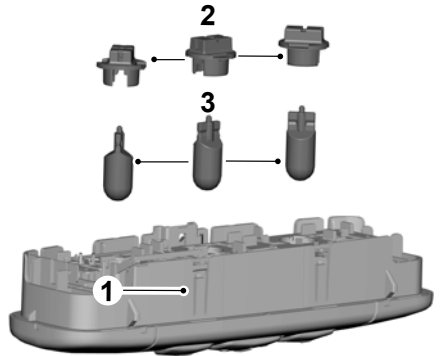
Interior Lamp



E246930

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

Reading Lamps



E246931

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
3. Remove the bulb.

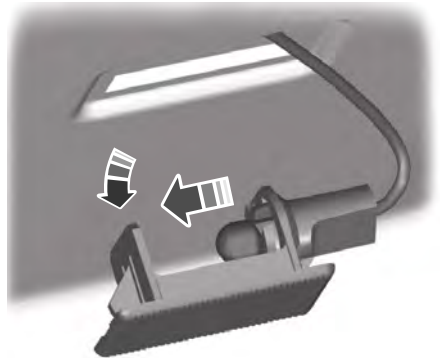
Map Lamp (driver side) (If Equipped)

1. Position the visor down.
2. Carefully remove the lamp.
3. Turn the bulb holder counterclockwise and remove it.
4. Remove the bulb.

Maintenance

Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell Lamp and Tailgate Lamp

(If Equipped)



E72784

1. Carefully remove the lamp.
2. Remove the bulb.

BULB SPECIFICATION CHART

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Front direction indicator.	WY21W	21
Front fog lamps.	H8W	35
Side repeater.	WY5W	5
Rear direction indicator.	PY21W	21
Brake and tail lamp.	P21/5W	21/5
Rear fog lamp.	P21W	21
Reversing lamps.	P21W	21
Number plate lamp.	W5W	5
Luggage compartment lamp.	W5W	5
Vanity lamp.	W5W	5

Maintenance

Low Series

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Headlamp high beam.	H1	55
Headlamp low beam.	H7	55

Mid Series

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Headlamp high beam.	H1	55
Headlamp low beam.	H18	65

High Series

Lamp	Specification	Power (watt)
Headlamp high beam.	H1	55
Headlamp low beam.	D5S	25

Note: *On some vehicles the lamps are LED. These are not serviceable items, please consult your dealer if they fail.*

CHANGING THE ENGINE AIR FILTER

WARNING



To reduce the risk of vehicle damage and personal burn injuries, do not start your engine with the air cleaner removed and do not remove it while the engine is running.

Note: *Failure to use the correct air filter element may result in severe engine damage.*

Changing the Air Filter Element

1. Remove the two clips that secure the air filter housing cover.
2. Carefully separate the two halves of the air filter housing.
3. Remove the air filter element from the air filter housing.
4. Wipe the air filter housing and cover clean to remove any dirt or debris and to ensure good sealing.
5. Install a new air filter element. Be careful not to crimp the filter element edges between the air filter housing and cover. This could cause filter damage and allow unfiltered air to enter the engine if not properly seated.
6. Fix the air filter housing cover and install the clips.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE EXTERIOR

Note: If you use a car wash with a waxing cycle, make sure that you remove the wax from the windshield and the wiper blades.

Note: Prior to using a car wash facility check the suitability of it for your vehicle.

Note: Some car washes use water at high pressure. Due to this, water droplets may enter inside your vehicle and could also damage certain parts of your vehicle.

Note: Remove the aerial before using an automatic car wash.

Note: Switch the heater blower off to prevent contamination of the fresh air filter.

We recommend that you wash your vehicle with a sponge and lukewarm water containing a car shampoo.

Cleaning the Headlamps

Note: Do not scrape the headlamp lenses or use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean them.

Note: Do not wipe the headlamps when they are dry.

Cleaning the Rear Window

Note: Do not scrape the inside of the rear window or use abrasives or chemical solvents to clean it.

Use a clean, lint free cloth or a damp chamois leather to clean the inside of the rear window.

Cleaning the Chrome Trim

Note: Do not use abrasives or chemical solvents. Use soapy water.

Note: Do not apply cleaning product to hot surfaces and do not leave cleaning product on chrome surfaces for a period of time exceeding that which is recommended.

Note: Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, may cause damage over a period of time.

Cleaning Stripes or Graphics (if Equipped)

Hand washing your vehicle is preferred however, pressure washing may be used under the following conditions:

- Do not use water pressure higher than 14,000 kPa.
- Do not use water hotter than 82°C.
- Use a spray with a 40° wide spray angle pattern.
- Keep the nozzle at a 305 mm distance and 90° angle to your vehicle's surface.

Note: Holding the pressure washer nozzle at an angle to the vehicle's surface may damage graphics and cause the edges to peel away from the vehicle's surface.

Body Paintwork Preservation

We recommend that you wax the paintwork once or twice a year.

Frequently wash the underbody of your vehicle if salt is applied on the road.

Note: Do not polish your vehicle in strong sunshine.

Note: Do not allow polish to touch plastic surfaces. It could be difficult to remove.

Note: Do not apply polish to the windshield or rear window. This could cause the wipers to become noisy and they may not clear the window properly.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING THE ENGINE

Note: *Due to the different materials found in the engine compartment, avoid using chemical cleaning products, aggressive detergents, degreasers, and acid or alkaline products that, due to their corrosive action, may be aggressive to certain components. Water steam cleaning should also be avoided.*

Note: *During the engine compartment wash, do not remove the transparent label that protects the VIN code. Engine oil, brake fluid, radiator additive, batteries and tires should be packed and stored in facilities especially prepared for handling industrial waste. Do not dispose of these items in public sewer systems or with domestic garbage. Environment preservation is a responsibility shared by all. You too should do your share.*

It is recommended to avoid frequent engine washes. However, when you do wash the engine, be careful not to use strong jets of water on the engine. Never wash a hot or running engine with cold water, because the thermal shock on warm surfaces may damage the engine. The air conditioning condenser and the radiator have aluminum fins that may be deformed when washed with high-pressure water jets. To avoid damages, wash only with low-pressure water jets.

Note: *Do not spill water, soap, or any other product on the generator and the starter motor. They may be damaged from the contact with liquids.*

When washing:

- Take care when using a power washer to clean the engine. The high-pressure fluid could penetrate the sealed parts and cause damage.
- Do not spray a hot engine with cold water to avoid cracking the engine block or other engine components.

- Never wash or rinse the engine while it is hot or running; water in the running engine may cause internal damage.
- Never wash or rinse any ignition coil, spark plug wire or spark plug well, or the area in and around these locations.
- Cover the battery, power distribution box and air filter assembly to prevent water damage when cleaning the engine.

CLEANING THE INTERIOR

Note: *Do not allow air fresheners and hand sanitizers to spill on interior surfaces. If a spill occurs, wipe off immediately. Damage may not be covered by your warranty.*

Note: *Do not use household cleaning products or glass cleaners, which can stain and discolor the fabric and affect the flame retardant abilities of the seat materials.*

Note: *We recommend distilled water when cleaning.*

Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners and Floor Mats

Note: *Avoid soaking any surface. Do not use excessive amounts of water to clean the vehicle interior.*

Note: *To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.*

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner or brush.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Vehicle Care

Seatbelts

WARNINGS



Do not use cleaning solvents, bleach or dye on the vehicle's seatbelts, as these actions may weaken the belt webbing.



On vehicles equipped with seat-mounted airbags, do not use chemical solvents or strong detergents. Such products could contaminate the side airbag system and affect performance of the side airbag in a crash.

Note: Do not use abrasives, or chemical solvents to clean them.

Note: Do not allow moisture to penetrate the seatbelt retractor mechanism.

Cleaning may safely be carried out using mild soap and water. Let them dry naturally, away from artificial heat.

Leather Interior (If Equipped)

Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.

Suede Micro Fiber Fabric (If Equipped)

Note: Do not steam clean.

Note: To avoid spots or discoloration, clean the entire surface.

Do not use the following products:

- Leather care products.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcoholic solutions.
- Spot removers.
- Shoe polish.

To clean:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.
- If a ring forms on the fabric after spot cleaning, clean the entire area immediately, but do not soak or the ring will set.

Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens and Radio Screens

Note: Do not use abrasives, alcoholic solvents or chemical solvents to clean the instrument cluster screens, LCD screens or radio screens. These cleaning products can damage the screens.

Clean the instrument panel and cluster lens with a clean, damp and soft cloth, then use a clean, dry and soft cloth to dry these areas.

Do not spray any liquid directly onto the screens.

Do not use a microfiber cloth to clean the bezel around the display screens as it could damage the surface.

Rear Windows

Note: Do not use any abrasive materials to clean the interior of the rear windows.

Note: Do not install stickers or labels to the interior of the rear windows.

Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and Ashtrays

To clean:

- Take out any removable inserts.
- Wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

Vehicle Care

CLEANING LEATHER SEATS (If

Equipped)

Note: *Follow the same procedure as cleaning leather seats for cleaning leather instrument panels and leather interior trim surfaces.*

For routine cleaning, wipe the surface with a soft, damp cloth and a mild soap and water solution. Dry the area with a clean, soft cloth.

For cleaning and removing stains such as dye transfer, use Motorcraft Premium Leather and Vinyl Cleaner or a commercially available leather cleaning product for automotive interiors.

Note: *Test any cleaner or stain remover on an inconspicuous area.*

You should:

- Remove dust and loose dirt with a vacuum cleaner.
- Clean and treat spills and stains as soon as possible.

Do not use the following products as these may damage the leather:

- Oil and petroleum or silicone-based leather conditioners.
- Household cleaners.
- Alcohol solutions.
- Solvents or cleaners intended specifically for rubber, vinyl and plastics.

REPAIRING MINOR PAINT DAMAGE

You should repair paintwork damage caused by stones from the road or minor scratches as soon as possible. A choice of products are available from an authorized dealer.

Remove particles such as bird droppings, tree sap, insect deposits, tar spots, road salt and industrial fallout before repairing paint chips.

Always read and follow the manufacturer's instructions before using the products.

CLEANING THE WHEELS

Note: *Do not apply a cleaning chemical to warm or hot wheel rims and covers.*

Note: *Industrial-strength (heavy-duty) cleaners, or cleaning chemicals, in combination with brush agitation to remove brake dust and dirt, could wear away the clear coat finish over a period of time.*

Note: *Do not use hydrofluoric acid-based or high caustic-based wheel cleaners, steel wool, fuels or strong household detergent.*

Note: *If you intend parking your vehicle for an extended period after cleaning the wheels with a wheel cleaner, drive your vehicle for a few minutes before doing so. This will reduce the risk of increased corrosion of the brake discs, brake pads and linings.*

Note: *Some automatic car washes may cause damage to the finish on your wheel rims and covers.*

Alloy wheels and wheel covers are coated with a clear coat paint finish. To maintain their condition we recommend that you:

- Clean them weekly with the recommended wheel and tire cleaner.
- Use a sponge to remove heavy deposits of dirt and brake dust accumulation.
- Rinse them thoroughly with a pressurized stream of water when you have completed the cleaning process.

We recommend that you use Ford service wheel cleaner. Make sure that you read and follow the manufacturer's instructions.

Vehicle Care

Using other non-recommended cleaning products can result in severe and permanent cosmetic damage.

Wheels and Tires

GENERAL INFORMATION

A decal with tire pressure data is located in the driver's door opening.

Check and set the tire pressure at the ambient temperature in which you are intending to drive your vehicle and when the tires are cold.

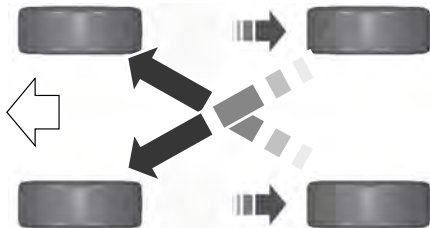
Note: Check your tire pressures regularly to optimize fuel economy.

Note: Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle and will make the National Type Approval invalid.

Note: If you change the diameter of the tires from that fitted at the factory, the speedometer may not display the correct speed. Take your vehicle to an authorized dealer to have the engine management system reprogrammed.

TIRE CARE

Non-directional tires



E142547

Note: Front tires shown on the left side of the diagram.

To make sure the front and rear tires of your vehicle wear evenly and last longer, we recommend that you swap the tires from front to rear and vice versa at regular intervals between 5,000 km and 10,000 km.

If the tire label shows different tire pressures for the front and rear tires and the vehicle is equipped with a tire pressure monitoring system, then the settings for the system sensors need to be updated. Always perform the system reset procedure after rotation. If the system is not reset, it may not provide a low tire pressure warning when necessary. See **Tire Pressure Monitoring System** (page 174).

Note: Your vehicle may be equipped with a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly. A dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly is defined as a spare tire or wheel that is different in brand, size or appearance from the road tires and wheels. If you have a dissimilar spare tire and wheel assembly, it is intended for temporary use only and should not be used in a tire rotation.

Note: After having your tires rotated, inflation pressure must be checked and adjusted to the vehicle requirements.

WARNING



Do not scrub the sidewalls of the tires when you are parking.

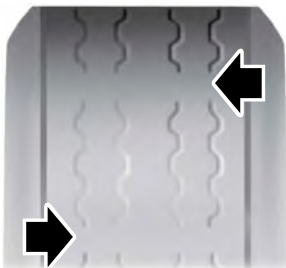
If you have to mount a curb, do so slowly and approach it with the wheels at right-angles to the curb.

Examine the tires regularly for cuts, foreign objects and uneven wear of the tread. Uneven wear could mean that the wheel alignment is outside specification.

Check the tire pressures (including the spare) when cold, every two weeks.

Wheels and Tires

Tire Wear



E142546

When the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 mm), tires must be replaced to help prevent your vehicle from skidding and hydroplaning. Built-in treadwear indicators, or wear bars, which look like narrow strips of smooth rubber across the tread will appear on the tire when the tread is worn down to one sixteenth of an inch (2 millimeters).

When the tire tread wears down to the same height as these wear bars, the tire is worn out and must be replaced.

Damage

Periodically inspect the tire treads and sidewalls for damage (such as bulges in the tread or sidewalls, cracks in the tread groove and separation in the tread or sidewall). If damage is observed or suspected have the tire inspected by a tire professional. Tires can be damaged during off-road use, so inspection after off-road use is also recommended.

Age

Tires degrade over time depending on many factors such as weather, storage conditions, and conditions of use (load, speed, inflation pressure) the tires experience throughout their lives.

In general, tires should be replaced after six years regardless of tread wear. However, heat caused by hot climates or frequent high loading conditions can accelerate the aging process and may require tires to be replaced more frequently.

You should replace your spare tire when you replace the road tires or after six years due to aging even if it has not been used.

Risks on the Road

No matter how carefully you drive, there is always the possibility that you may have a flat tire on the road. Drive slowly to the closest safe area, away from traffic. This may further damage the deflated tire, but your safety is more important.

If you feel a vibration or ride disturbance while driving, or suspect your tire or vehicle is damaged, reduce speed immediately. Drive with caution until you can get off the road safely. Stop and check for damage to the tires. If a tire is damaged or deflated, remove the wheel and replace it with the spare wheel.

Alignment

A bad jolt from hitting the edge of the sidewalk or a pothole can cause the front tires to become misaligned or damaged. If your vehicle seems to pull to one side while driving, the wheels may have lost alignment. Have an authorized dealer periodically check the wheel alignment. Misalignment of the front or rear wheels can cause uneven or rapid tire wear and must be corrected by an authorized dealer. The driving wheels and vehicles with an independent rear suspension may require alignment of the four wheels.

An unbalanced tire and wheel assembly may result in uneven tire wear.

Note: *Tire failure due to a lack of alignment or balance is not covered under warranty.*

Wheels and Tires

Note: *Alignment and balance is the responsibility of the owner of the vehicle.*

USING SNOW CHAINS

WARNING



Snow tires must be the same size, load index and speed rating as those originally provided by Ford. Use of any tire or wheel not recommended by Ford can affect the safety and performance of your vehicle, which could result in an increased risk of loss of control, vehicle rollover, personal injury and death. Additionally, the use of non-recommended tires and wheels can cause steering, suspension, axle, transfer case or power transfer unit failure. Follow the Ford recommended tire inflation pressure found on the Safety Compliance Certification Label (on the door hinge pillar, door latch post or the door edge that meets the door latch post, next to the driver seat), or Tire Label on the B-Pillar or the edge of the driver door. Failure to follow the tire pressure recommendations can cause uneven treadwear patterns and adversely affect the way your vehicle handles.

The tires on your vehicle may have all-weather treads to provide traction in rain and snow. However, in some climates you may need to use snow chains. If you need to use chains, it is recommended that steel wheels (of the same size and specification) be used, as chains may chip aluminum wheels. Follow these guidelines when using traction devices:

- Use 10 mm or less in dimension as measured on the sidewall of your tire with 205/60 R16 92H, 205/50 R17 93W XL or 195/65 R15 91T. Not all S-class snow chains meet these restrictions. Chains of this size restriction will include a tensioning device.
- The snow chains or cables must be mounted in pairs on only on the front axle.
- Purchase chains or cables from a manufacturer that clearly labels body to tire dimension restrictions.
- When installing tire chains or cables, make sure they are the proper size for the tires on your vehicle and are installed according to the chain manufacturer's suggestions.
- Install cables securely, verifying that the cables do not extend beyond the wheel or touch the wheel, any wiring, brake lining.
- If possible, avoid fully loading your vehicle.
- When driving with snow chains or cables, do not exceed 48 km/h or the maximum speed recommended by the chain manufacturer; whichever is less.
- Drive cautiously. If you hear the chains or cables rub or bang against the vehicle, stop and retighten them. If this does not work, remove the chains or cables and prevent vehicle damage.

Wheels and Tires

- Remove the chains or cables when they are no longer needed. Do not use the chains or cables on dry roads.
- If a temporary spare tire is mounted on your vehicle, do not use snow chains on the axle with the temporary spare tire.

If you have any questions regarding snow tires or snow chains, please contact your authorized dealer.

TIRE PRESSURE MONITORING SYSTEM (If Equipped)

WARNING



The tire pressure monitoring system is not a substitute for manually checking tire pressures. You should periodically check tire pressures using a pressure gauge. Failure to correctly maintain tire pressures could increase the risk of tire failure, loss of control, vehicle rollover and personal injury.



You must check the tire pressures (including the spare tire where applicable) every two weeks when the tires are cold.

You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar). As a driver assistance feature, your vehicle has a tire pressure monitoring system. A warning lamp will illuminate when one or more of the tires are significantly under-inflated.

If the low tire pressure warning lamp illuminates, you should stop your vehicle as soon as it is safe to do so, check the tires and inflate them to the correct pressure.

Driving on under-inflated tires can:

- Cause them to overheat.
- Lead to tire failure.
- Reduce fuel efficiency.
- Reduced tire life.
- Affect vehicle handling or stopping ability.

The system is not a substitute for correct tire maintenance.

You must maintain the correct tire pressures, even if low tire pressure has not illuminated the warning lamp.

To check the tire pressures through the information display, scroll to:

Message	Action and Description
Tire Monitor	Press the OK button. The tyre pressure graphic displays.

The tire pressure monitoring system has a system malfunction indicator to warn you when the system is not operating correctly. The malfunction indicator and low tire pressure warning lamp have a combined function. When the system detects a malfunction, the warning lamp will flash for approximately one minute and then remain illuminated. This sequence will occur every time you switch the ignition on while the malfunction remains. The system has detected a fault that requires service.

When the malfunction indicator is illuminated, the system may not be able to detect or signal low tire pressures. A malfunction may occur for a variety of reasons, including the installation of a replacement tire or wheel that prevents the system from functioning correctly. Always check the tire pressure monitoring system malfunction warning after

Wheels and Tires

replacing one or more tires or wheels on your vehicle. Make sure the replacement tires or wheels allow the system to continue to function correctly. See **When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed** in this section.

How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures

Under normal driving conditions tire pressures may increase by up to 0.3 bar from a cold start situation.

If the vehicle is stationary overnight and the temperature significantly lower than the daytime temperature, tire pressures may decrease by up to 0.2 bar when there is a drop in the ambient temperature of 31°F (17°C) or more. The system detects this pressure decrease as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates.

Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System



E142549

You should always have tires serviced by an authorized dealer.

Each road wheel and tire is fitted with a tire pressure sensor located inside the wheel and tire assembly cavity. The pressure sensor attaches to the valve stem. The tire covers the pressure sensor and it is not visible unless the tire is removed. Take care when changing the tire to avoid damaging the sensor.

Note: *The spare wheel does not have a pressure sensor.*

Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System

The system measures the pressure in the four road tires and sends the tire pressure readings to your vehicle.



E250820

The system detects this lower pressure as being significantly below the correct inflation pressure and the warning lamp illuminates. You must inflate the tires to the correct pressure.

Wheels and Tires

When the Temporary Spare Tire is Installed

If you need to replace a road wheel and tire with the temporary spare wheel, the system will continue to identify a defect. This is to remind you to repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle. To restore the correct operation of the system, you must have the repaired road wheel and tire assembly refitted to your vehicle.

When You Believe the System is Not Operating Correctly

The main function of the system is to warn you when the tire pressures are low. It can also warn you in the event the system is no longer capable of operating correctly. See the following chart for information concerning the system:

When Inflating the Tires

When inflating the tires the system may not respond immediately to the air added to the tires.

Wheels and Tires

System Warning Lamps

Warning lamp	Description	Action
Solid warning lamp	Tire(s) under-inflated	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> 1. Make sure tires are at the correct pressure. The tire pressures are also on the tire inflation pressure label (located on the edge of driver door or the B-Pillar). 2. After inflating the tires to the correct pressure you must carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure. See Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure in this chapter.
	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.
Solid warning lamp initially followed by a flashing warning lamp	Spare tire in use	Repair the damaged road wheel and tire and refit the repaired road wheel and tire assembly to your vehicle to restore the correct operation of the system.
	Tire pressure monitoring system malfunction	If the tires are correctly inflated and the spare tire is not in use but the light remains on, the system has detected a fault that requires service.

If the Warning Lamp is On:

1. Check each tire to verify that none are flat.
2. If one or more tires are flat, repair as necessary.
3. Check the tire pressures and inflate all the tires to the correct pressure.
4. Carry out the tire pressure monitoring system reset procedure.

Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure

Overview

To maintain your vehicle load carrying capability, your vehicle requires different tire pressures in the front tires compared to the rear tires.

The system illuminates the warning lamp at different pressures for the front and rear tires.

Wheels and Tires

The tires need to be periodically rotated to provide consistent performance and maximum tire life, the system needs to know when the tires have been rotated to determine which set of tires are on the front and rear axles. With this information, the system can detect and correctly warn of low tire pressures.

Carrying Out the System Reset Procedure

1. Switch the ignition on.
2. Using the information display control, navigate to tire pressure reset. See **Information Displays** (page 62).
3. Press and hold the OK button until confirmation appears.

To reset the tire pressure monitoring system for vehicles equipped with 2.3" information display, scroll to:

Message	Description and Action
Tire Monitor	Press and hold the OK button until reset confirmation appears.

To reset the tire pressure monitoring system for vehicles equipped with 4.2" information display, scroll to:

Message	Description and Action
Settings	Press and hold the Menu button.
Information	Press the OK button.
Tire Pressure	Press the OK button.
Tire Monitor	Press and hold the OK button until reset confirmation appears.

CHANGING A ROAD WHEEL






Vehicles With a Spare Wheel

If the spare wheel is exactly the same type and size as the other fitted wheels, you can replace the existing road wheel with the spare wheel and continue to drive in the normal manner.

If the spare wheel is different to the other wheels, it will carry a yellow label with the appropriate speed limit.

See the following information before changing the wheel.

WARNINGS

-  Drive the shortest possible distances.
-  Do not fit more than one spare wheel on your vehicle at any one time.
-  Do not carry out any tire repairs on a spare wheel.
-  If you are not sure what type of spare wheel your vehicle has, do not exceed 80 km/h.
-  The ground clearance of your vehicle may be reduced. Take care when parking next to a curb.









Wheels and Tires

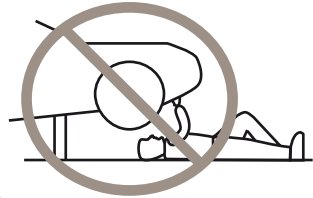
Note: Your vehicle may exhibit some different driving characteristics if you fit the spare wheel.

Note: If the spare wheel is fitted to your vehicle, do not drive through an automatic car wash.

Vehicle Jack (If Equipped)

WARNINGS

-  The jack should be used on level firm ground wherever possible.
-  Switch the ignition off and apply the park brake fully before lifting vehicle.
-  It is recommended that the wheels of the vehicle be chocked, and that no person should remain in a vehicle that is being jacked.
-  No person should place any portion of their body under a vehicle that is supported by a jack.
-  The jack supplied with this vehicle is only intended for changing wheels. Do not use the vehicle jack other than when you are changing a wheel in an emergency.
-  Check that the vehicle jack is not damaged or deformed and the thread is lubricated and clean.
-  Never place anything between the vehicle jack and the ground.
-  Never place anything between the vehicle jack and your vehicle.




E166722

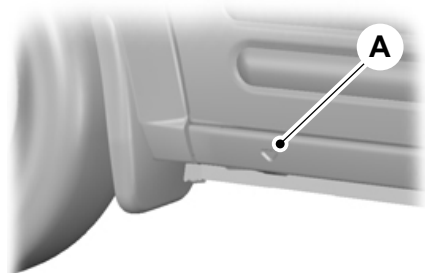
Jack and Associated Tools

Your vehicle's jack, wheel brace, towing hook, warning triangle and locking wheel nut key are located in the luggage compartment under the floor cover, in a tool kit.

Jacking and Lifting Points

WARNING

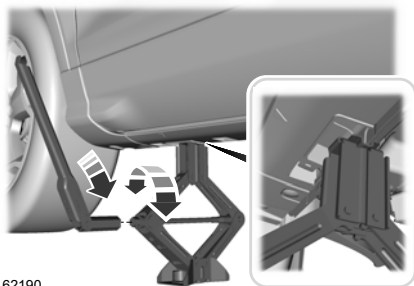
-  Use only the specified jacking points. If you use other positions, you may damage the body, steering, suspension, engine, braking system or the fuel lines.



E93302

- A Small arrow-shaped marks on the sills show the location of the jacking points.









Wheels and Tires





E162190

Removing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

-  Park your vehicle in such a position that neither the traffic nor you are hindered or endangered.
-  Park your vehicle so that you do not obstruct the flow of traffic or place yourself in any danger and set up a warning triangle.
-  Make sure that your vehicle is on firm and level ground with the front wheels pointing straight ahead.
-  Switch the ignition off and apply the parking brake.
-  If your vehicle has a manual transmission, shift into first or reverse gear. If your vehicle has an automatic transmission, shift into park (P).
-  Make sure all passengers are out of your vehicle.
-  Secure the diagonally opposite wheel with an appropriate block or wheel chock.
-  Make sure that the arrows on directional tires point in the direction of rotation when your vehicle is moving forward. If you have to fit a spare tire with the arrows pointing in the opposite direction have the tire refitted as soon as possible.

WARNINGS

-  Do not work on your vehicle when the jack is the only support. If the vehicle slips off the jack, you or someone else could be seriously injured.
-  Make sure that the vehicle jack is vertical to the jacking point and the base is flat on the ground.

Note: Do not lay alloy wheels face down on the ground, this will damage the paint.



Note: The spare wheel is located on the rear swing gate.

To remove the spare wheel, slacken the lug nuts (including the locking nut). The locking wheel nut key is located in the luggage compartment, under the floor cover in the tool kit.


1. Loosen each wheel lug nut one-half turn counterclockwise, but do not remove them.
2. Jack up your vehicle until the tire is clear of the ground.
3. Remove the lug nuts and the wheel.

Installing a Road Wheel

WARNINGS

-  Use only approved wheel and tire sizes. Using other sizes could damage your vehicle.
-  Do not fit run flat tires on vehicles that were not originally fitted with them. Contact an authorized dealer for more details about compatibility.

WARNINGS

-  Do not install alloy wheels using lug nuts designed for use with steel wheels.

Wheels and Tires

WARNINGS

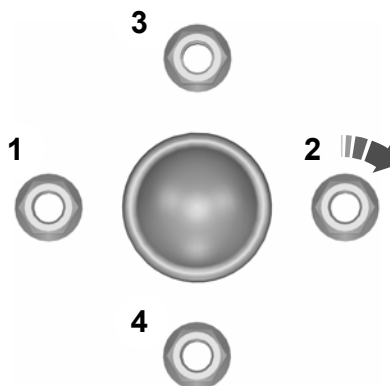


Make sure there is no grease or oil on the threads or the surface between the wheel lugs and nuts. This can cause the lug nuts to loosen while driving.

Note: Make sure the wheel and hub contact surfaces are free from foreign matter.

Note: Make sure that the cones on the lug nuts are against the wheel.

1. Install the wheel.
2. Install the lug nuts finger tight.



E90589

3. Partially tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown.
4. Lower your vehicle and remove the jack.
5. Fully tighten the lug nuts in the sequence shown. See **Technical Specifications** (page ?).

WARNING



Have the lug nuts checked for tightness and the tire pressure checked as soon as possible.

TIRE PRESSURES

Tire size	Normal load		Full load	
	Front	Rear	Front	Rear
195/65 R15	30 PSI	30 PSI	35 PSI	41 PSI
205/60 R16	30 PSI	30 PSI	35 PSI	41 PSI
205/50 R17	30 PSI	30 PSI	35 PSI	41 PSI

Wheels and Tires

LUG NUTS

Lug Nut Torque

Bolt Size	Nm
M12 x 1.5	133 Nm
M12 x 1.5 ¹	55 Nm

¹Spare Wheel.

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L, GASOLINE

Item	Specification
Engine position	Front mount/transverse
Engine type	1.5L TiVCT
Number and arrangement of cylinders	In-line 3 cylinder
Valves	4 per cylinder
Actuation	Twin independent variable camshaft timing - tappet valve actuation
Cylinder bore	84 mm
Stroke	90 mm
Compression ratio	11:1
Displacement	1,497 cm ³
Engine output	90.5 kW@ 6500 rpm
Maximum torque	150 Nm @ 4500 rpm
Fuel type	Gasoline
Maximum engine speed	6750 rpm
Engine speed at idle - Automatic Transmission	850 rpm
Engine speed at idle - Manual Transmission	850 rpm
Fuel system	Digital multipoint sequential electronic fuel injection (PFI)
Firing order	1-2-3
Ignition system	Electronic digital
Air induction type	Naturally aspirated engine
Spark plug gap	1.2 ± 0.05 mm

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L DIESEL

Item	Specification
Engine position	Front mount/transverse
Engine type	1.5L TDCi
Number and arrangement of cylinders	In-line 4 cylinder
Valves	2 per cylinder
Actuation	Hydraulic tappet
Cylinder bore	73.5 mm
Stroke	88.3 mm
Compression ratio	16.0:1
Displacement	1,499 cm ³
Engine output	73.5 KW @ 3750 rpm
Maximum torque.	215 Nm @ 1750-3000 rpm
Fuel type	Diesel
Maximum engine speed	5000 rpm
Engine speed at idle - Manual Transmission	750 rpm
Fuel system	Direct injection with common rail system and high pressure pump
Firing order	1-3-4-2
Ignition system	Electronic digital
Air induction type	Naturally aspirated engine

Capacities and Specifications

ENGINE SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

Item	Specification
Engine position	Front mount/transverse
Engine type	1.0L GTDI
Number and arrangement of cylinders	In-line 3 cylinder
Valves	4 per cylinder
Actuation	Twin independent variable camshaft timing - tappet valve actuation
Cylinder bore	71.9 mm
Stroke	82 mm
Compression ratio	10:1
Displacement	999 cm ³
Engine output - gasoline	92 KW @ 6000 rpm
Maximum torque - gasoline OverBoost torque	170 Nm @ 1500-4500 rpm 200 Nm @ 2000 rpm
Fuel type	91 & 95RON E10
Maximum engine speed	6500 rpm
Engine speed at idle	860 rpm
Fuel	Gasoline
Firing order	1-2-3
Ignition system	Direct Injection
Air induction type	Turbo charged Engine
Spark plug gap	0.7 ± 0.05 mm

Capacities and Specifications

WEIGHTS - 1.5L, DIESEL, INDIA

Parameter	AMBIENTE	TREND	TREND PLUS	TITANIUM	TITANIUM PLUS
Gross vehicle weight rating.	1,690 kg				
Front gross axle weight rating.	880 kg				
Rear gross axle weight rating.	855 kg				

Capacities and Specifications

WEIGHTS - 1.5L, GASOLINE, INDIA, 5-SPEED MANUAL TRANSMISSION

Parameter	AMBIENTE	TREND	TITANIUM
Gross vehicle weight rating.		1,650 kg	
Front gross axle weight rating.		880 kg	
Rear gross axle weight rating.		855 kg	

Capacities and Specifications

WEIGHTS - 1.5L, GASOLINE, INDIA, 6-SPEED AUTOMATIC TRANSMISSION

Parameter	TREND PLUS	TITANIUM PLUS
Gross vehicle weight rating.		1,705 kg
Front gross axle weight rating.		880 kg
Rear gross axle weight rating.		855 kg

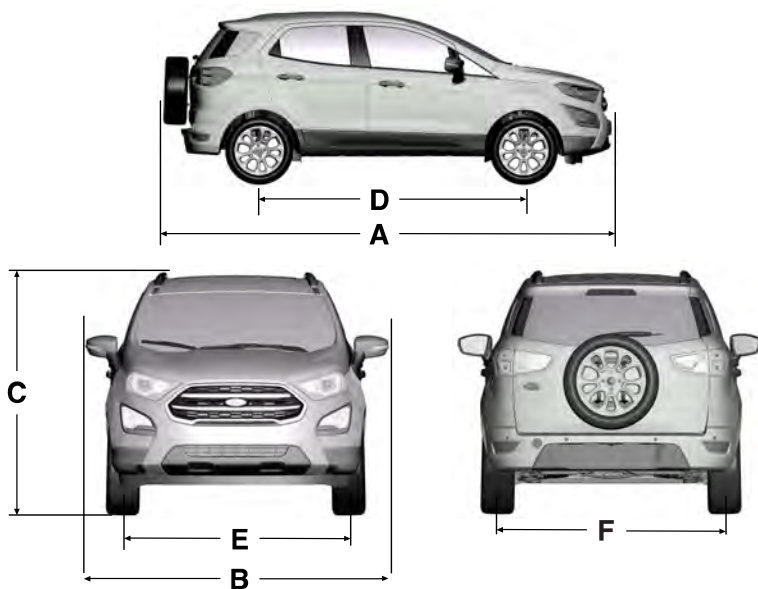
Capacities and Specifications

WEIGHTS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™, INDIA

Parameter	TITANIUM PLUS
Gross vehicle weight rating.	1,670 kg
Front gross axle weight rating.	880 kg
Rear gross axle weight rating.	855 kg

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE DIMENSIONS



E249325

Item	Dimension Description	Dimension in mm (inches)
A	Maximum length. ¹	4224
A	Maximum length. ³	3998
B	Overall width including exterior mirrors.	2057
B	Overall width excluding exterior mirrors.	1765
C	Overall height.	1647
C	Overall height. ²	1665
D	Wheelbase.	2519

Capacities and Specifications

Item	Dimension Description	Dimension in mm (inches)
E	Front track.	1519
E	Rear track.	1524
¹ Including license plate bracket. ² Including Roof Rack. ³ Excluding Spare Wheel.		

Luggage Compartment

Variant	Volume in Litres
AMBIENTE. TREND.	341
TITANIUM. TITANIUM PLUS	348
TITANIUM. TITANIUM PLUS ¹	328
TREND PLUS.	352

¹Equipped with Adjustable Load Floor.

Capacities and Specifications

VEHICLE IDENTIFICATION PLATE

Note: Your vehicle identification plate design may vary to that shown.

Note: The information shown on the vehicle identification plate is dependent upon market requirements.



E228056

- A Name of Manufacturer
- B Vehicle identification number
- C Gross vehicle weight
- D Gross train weight
- E Maximum front axle weight
- F Maximum rear axle weight
- G Vehicle type

Your vehicle identification number and maximum weights are shown on a plate, located at the bottom of the lock side of the right-hand door aperture.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L DIESEL

WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities and Specifications

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	3.8 L
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	3.5 L
Engine coolant fill capacity.	6 L
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity. ¹	2.1 L
Fuel tank fill capacity.	52 L
Washer system fill capacity.	2.5 L

¹Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes. Contact an authorized dealer for fluid level checking and filling.

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
0.6 L

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-30	WSS-M2C913-D
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B44-D
Manual Transmission Fluid - SAE 75W	WSS-M2C200-D2
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2

Note: Do not use more than 1 L of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.

Specifications

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. Use oil and fluids that meet the defined specification and viscosity grades.

Note: Use of the fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by the vehicle.

- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

Capacities and Specifications

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.5L

WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	3.65 L
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	3.5 L
Engine coolant fill capacity.	6.5 L
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity. ¹	8.7 L
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity.	2.3 L
Fuel tank fill capacity.	52 L
Washer system fill capacity.	4.5 L

¹Approximate dry fill capacity. Actual amount may vary during fluid changes. Contact an authorized dealer for fluid level checking and filling.

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
0.6 L

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Specifications

Only use fluid that meets Ford specifications. Use oil and fluids that meet the defined specification and viscosity grades.

Note: *Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by the vehicle Warranty.*

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B44-D
Automatic Transmission Fluid	MERCON® ULV WSS-M2C949-A
Manual Transmission Fluid - SAE 75W	WSS-M2C200-D2
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2

Capacities and Specifications

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B or WSS-M2C913-D, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2 or a SAE 5W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: Do not use more than 1 L of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.

- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

CAPACITIES AND SPECIFICATIONS - 1.0L ECOBOOST™

WARNING



The air conditioning refrigerant system contains refrigerant under high pressure. Only qualified personnel should service the air conditioning refrigerant system. Opening the air conditioning refrigerant system can cause personal injury.

Capacities

Item	Capacity
Engine oil fill capacity including the oil filter.	4.6 L
Engine oil fill capacity excluding the oil filter.	4.4 L
Engine coolant fill capacity.	7.2 L
Automatic transmission fluid fill capacity.	8.7 L
Manual transmission fluid fill capacity.	1.2L
Fuel tank fill capacity.	52 L
Washer system fill capacity.	2.5 L

Adding Engine Oil

Quantity
1 L

The quantity of engine oil required to raise the indicated level on the dipstick from minimum to maximum.

Specifications

Use oil and fluids that meet the defined specification and viscosity grades.

Note: Use of other fluids may lead to damage which is not covered by the vehicle Warranty.

Capacities and Specifications

Materials

Name	Specification
Engine Oil - SAE 5W-20	WSS-M2C948-B
Antifreeze	WSS-M97B44-D2
Brake Fluid	WSS-M6C65-A2
Automatic Transmission Fluid	MERCON® ULV WSS-M2C949-A
Manual Transmission Fluid - SAE 75W	WSS-M2C200-D2
Windshield Washer Fluid	WSS-M14P19-A

If you are unable to find an engine oil that meets the specification defined by WSS-M2C948-B or WSS-M2C913-D, it is acceptable to use a SAE 5W-20 engine oil that is defined by ACEA C2 or a SAE 5W-30 engine oil that is defined by ACEA A5/B5.

Note: *Do not use more than 1 L of the alternative engine oil between scheduled service intervals.*

Using oil and fluids that do not meet the defined specification and viscosity grade may lead to:

- Component damage which may not be covered by the vehicle Warranty.
- Longer engine cranking periods.
- Increased emission levels.
- Reduced engine performance.
- Reduced fuel economy.
- Degraded brake performance.

Audio System

GENERAL INFORMATION

Radio Frequencies and Reception Factors

Radio Reception Factors	
Distance and Strength	The further you travel away from an FM station, the weaker the signal and the weaker the reception.
Terrain	Hills, mountains, tall buildings, bridges, tunnels, freeway overpasses, parking garages, dense tree foliage and thunderstorms can interfere with the reception.
Station overload	When you pass near a radio transmission tower, a stronger signal can override a weaker signal and can cause interference in the audio system.

MP3 and WMA Track and Folder Structure

Audio systems capable of recognizing and playing MP3 and WMA individual tracks and folder structures work as follows:

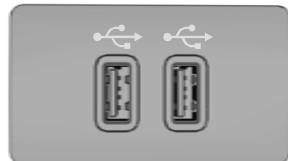
- There are two different modes for MP3 and WMA disc playback: MP3 and WMA track mode (system default) and MP3 and WMA folder mode.
- MP3 and WMA track mode ignores any folder structure on the MP3 and WMA disc. The player numbers each MP3 and WMA track on the disc (noted by the .mp3 or .WMA file extension) from T001 to a maximum of T255.

USB PORT (If Equipped)

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.



E242003

Audio System

The USB port allows you to plug in media playing devices, memory sticks and charge devices (if supported). See **Audio System** (page 197).

GENERAL INFORMATION

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Getting to Know Your System

The SYNC 3 system allows you to interact with a variety of features using the touchscreen and voice commands. By integrating with your Bluetooth-enabled phone, the touchscreen provides easy interaction with audio, multimedia, navigation, and your phone's SYNC 3 compatible apps.

Using the Touchscreen

To operate the touchscreen, you can simply touch the item or option that you want to select. The button changes color when you select it.

The SYNC 3 layout allows you to quickly select the feature you wish to use.



E207614

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
A	Status Bar	This bar displays icons and messages pertaining to current system activities including voice commands and phone functions such as text messages.
B	Home	This button is available on the main screens. Pressing it takes you to the home screen view.
C	Clock	This shows the current time. You can set the clock manually or have it controlled by the vehicle's GPS location.
D	Outside Temperature	This displays the current outside temperature.
E	Feature Bar	You can touch any of the buttons on this bar to select a feature.

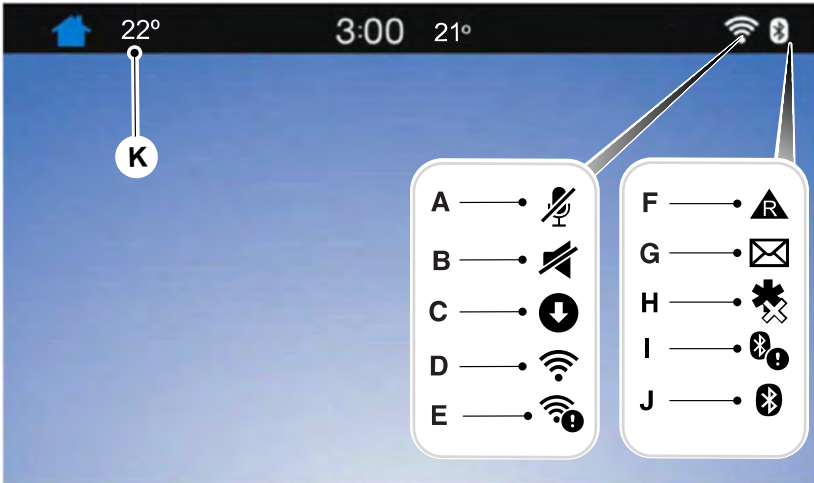
The touchscreen allows you quick access to all of your comfort, navigation, communication and entertainment options. Using the status and feature bar you can quickly select the feature you want to use.

Note: *Your system is equipped with a feature that allows you to access and control audio features for 60 minutes after you switch the ignition off (and no doors open).*

The Status Bar

Additional icons also display in the status bar depending on market, vehicle options and current operation. If a feature is not active, the icon does not display. Certain icons may move to the left or right depending on what options are active.

SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)



E260415

Callout	Item	Description
A	Microphone Mute	This icon displays when your phone's microphone is muted. A caller cannot hear you.
B	Mute	When you mute the audio system this icon appears.
C	Downloading	This icon appears when SYNC 3 has received a software update. Pressing the icon shows more details about the new software.
D	Wi-Fi	This icon appears if a Wi-Fi network is connected.
E	Wi-Fi in Range	An available Wi-Fi network is within range.
F	Roaming	When your cell phone roams, this icon appears.
G	Text Message	This icon displays when you receive a text message on your phone.
H	Emergency Assistance (If equipped)	This icon displays when Emergency Assistance is set to off and your phone is connected to SYNC.
I	Bluetooth Alert If available	The Bluetooth alert icon displays when there is an active Bluetooth alert.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Callout	Item	Description
J	Bluetooth	This icon displays to show an active Bluetooth connection.
K	Driver Temperature ¹	This shows the temperature the driver selects through the climate control system.

¹If equipped.

Messages may also appear in the status bar to provide you with notifications. You can select the message to view the associated feature.

Feature Bar

Feature Bar Item	Functions
Audio	Allows you to control the media playing in your vehicle. You can control all audio features including radio, and media streaming over a Bluetooth device or through a USB connection.
Phone	Allows you to make calls, receive calls, and access the phonebook of your connected device.
Navigation (If equipped)	Allows you to see your vehicle's location on a virtual road map, get driving directions to your destination and find points of interest along your route.
Mobile Apps	Connect and control SYNC 3 compatible apps running on your iPhone or Android device.
Settings	You can customize your system with various settings for the touchscreen display, feature preferences, and how you want to interact with your vehicle.

Cleaning the Touchscreen

You can remove fingerprints with a dry, clean, soft cloth.

If dirt or fingerprints are still on the screen, apply a small amount of alcohol to the cloth and try to clean it again.

Note: Do not use detergent or any type of solvent to clean the touchscreen.

Note: Do not pour or spray alcohol onto the touchscreen.

Using Voice Recognition

Using voice commands allows you to keep your hands on the wheel and focus on what is in front of you. The system provides feedback through audible tones, prompts, questions and spoken confirmations depending on the situation and the chosen level of interaction (voice settings).

The system also asks short questions (confirmation prompts) when it is not sure of your request or when there are multiple possible responses to your request.

When using voice commands, words and icons may appear in the status bar indicating the status of the voice command session. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 209).

Using the Steering Wheel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you can use different controls on your steering wheel to interact with the touchscreen system in different ways.

VOL: Control the volume of audio output.

Voice: Press to start a voice session. Press again to stop the voice prompt and immediately begin speaking. Press and hold to end a voice session.

SEEK NEXT:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets. Press and hold to increment quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
- While in USB or Bluetooth Audio press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

SEEK PREVIOUS:

- While in radio mode, press to seek between memory presets. Press and hold to decrement quickly, until you find a station you want to listen to.
- While in USB or Bluetooth Audio press to seek between songs or press and hold to fast seek.

PHONE ACCEPT: Press to answer a call or switch between calls.

PHONE REJECT: Press to end a call or reject an incoming call.

Note: On some models, **SEEK NEXT** may be combined with **PHONE REJECT** and **SEEK PREVIOUS** may be combined with **PHONE ACCEPT**.

See **Steering Wheel** (page 41).

Using Your Bezel Controls

Depending on your vehicle and option package, you may also have these controls on your instrument panel:

- **Power** or **VOL:** Press to switch the audio system on and off, or turn to adjust the volume.
- **Sound Settings:** Press to access the audio settings.
- **Seek:** Press to seek through radio stations or audio tracks.
- **Play** or **Pause:** Press to either play or pause a track.
- **Tune:** Turn to manually tune radio stations.
- **Display:** Press to switch the display on or off.

Emergency Assist (If Equipped)

WARNINGS



Unless the Emergency Assistance setting is on prior to a collision, the system does not attempt to place an emergency call. This could delay the response time, increasing the risk of serious injury or death.



Do not wait for Emergency Assistance to make an emergency call if you can do it yourself. Dial emergency services immediately to avoid a delayed response time. If you do not hear Emergency Assistance within five seconds of the crash, the system or cell phone may be damaged or non-functional.



Always place your phone in a secure location in your vehicle so it does not become a projectile or get damaged in a crash. Failure to do so may cause serious injury to someone or damage the phone which could prevent Emergency Assistance from working properly.

Note: The SYNC Emergency Assist feature must be set on before the incident.

Note: The SYNC Emergency Assist feature only operates in territories that are supporting the feature.

Note: Before setting this feature on, make sure that you read the Emergency Assist Privacy Notice later in this section for important information.

Note: If any user sets Emergency Assist to on or off, that setting applies for all paired phones. If Emergency Assist is switched off and the phone is connected to SYNC, an icon displays on the status bar.

Note: Every phone operates differently. While SYNC Emergency Assist works with most cellular phones, some may have trouble using this feature.

If a crash deploys an airbag (excluding knee airbags and rear inflatable seatbelts [if equipped]) or activates the fuel pump shut-off, your SYNC-equipped vehicle may be able to contact emergency services by dialing Emergency number through a paired and connected Bluetooth-enabled phone. You can learn more about the Emergency Assist feature, by visiting your regional website.

To switch Emergency Assist on and off please view the settings information. See **Settings** (page 227).

To make sure that Emergency Assist works correctly:

- SYNC must be powered and working properly at the time of the incident and throughout feature activation and use.
- The Emergency Assist feature must be set on before the incident.
- You must pair and connect a Bluetooth-enabled and compatible cell phone to SYNC.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have the ability to make and maintain an outgoing call at the time of the incident.
- A connected Bluetooth-enabled phone must have adequate network coverage, battery power and signal strength.
- The vehicle must have battery power and be located in a territory where Emergency assist is supported.

In the Event of a Crash

Not all crashes will deploy an airbag or activate the fuel pump shut-off (the triggers for Emergency Assist). If a connected cell phone sustains damage or loses its connection to SYNC during a crash, SYNC will search for and try to connect to a previously paired cell phone; SYNC will then attempt to call the emergency services.

Before making the call:

- SYNC provides a short window of time (about 10 seconds) to cancel the call. If you fail to cancel the call, SYNC attempts to dial Emergency.
- SYNC says the following, or a similar message: "SYNC will attempt to call Emergency, to cancel the call, press Cancel on your screen or press and hold the phone button on your steering wheel."

If you do not cancel the call, and SYNC makes a successful call, a pre-recorded message plays for the Emergency operator, and then the occupant(s) in your vehicle is able to talk with the operator. Be prepared to provide your name, phone number and location immediately, because not all Emergency systems are capable of receiving this information electronically.

Emergency Assist May Not Work If

- Your cellular phone or Emergency Assist hardware sustains damage in a crash.
- The vehicle's battery or the SYNC system has no power.
- The phone(s) thrown from your vehicle are the ones paired and connected to the system.

Emergency Assist Privacy Notice

When you switch on Emergency Assist, it may disclose to emergency services that your vehicle has been in a crash involving the deployment of an airbag or activation of the fuel pump shut-off. Certain versions or updates to Emergency Assist may also be capable of electronically or verbally disclosing to Emergency operators your

vehicle location or other details about your vehicle or crash to assist Emergency operators to provide the most appropriate emergency services. If you do not want to disclose this information, do not switch the feature on.

Safety Information

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

- Do not attempt to service or repair the system. Have an authorized dealer check your vehicle.
- Do not operate playing devices if the power cords or cables are broken, split or damaged. Place cords and cables out of the way, so they do not interfere with the operation of pedals, seats, compartments or safe driving abilities.
- Do not leave playing devices in your vehicle during extreme conditions as it could cause them damage. See your device's user guide for further information.
- For your safety, some SYNC 3 functions are speed-dependent. Their use is limited to when your vehicle is traveling at speeds under 5 km/h. Make sure that you review your device's manual before using it with SYNC 3.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Speed-restricted Features

Some features of this system may be too difficult to use while your vehicle is moving so they are restricted from use unless your vehicle is stationary.

- Screens crowded with information, such as Point of Interest.
- Any action that requires you to use a keyboard is restricted, such as entering a navigation destination or editing information.
- All lists are limited so the user can view fewer entries (such as phone contacts or recent phone call entries).

See the following chart for more specific examples.

Restricted features	
Cellular Phone	Pairing a Bluetooth phone.
	Browsing of list entries is limited for phone contacts and recent phone calls.
System Functionality	Editing the keypad code.
	Enabling Valet Mode.
	Editing settings while the rear view camera or active park assist are active.
Wi-Fi	Editing Wi-Fi settings.
	Editing the list of wireless networks.
	Connecting to a new Wi-Fi network.
Text Messages	Viewing received text messages.
Navigation (If equipped)	Using the keyboard to enter a destination.
	Adding or editing Navigation Favorites entries or Avoid Areas.

Creating a SYNC Owner Account (If Equipped)

Why do I need a SYNC owner account?

- Essential for keeping up with the latest software and connected features.
- Access to customer support for any questions you may have.
- Maintain account permissions.

Visit the website to sign up and register.

Website
www.fordsync.com

Note: *This feature may not be available in some markets.*

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Updating Your System (If Equipped)

You can choose to download the update onto a USB drive or use Wi-Fi to deliver automatic updates.

USB Updates

To use the USB update you need to log into your owner account and visit the SYNC software update page.

Website
www.fordsync.com

Note: *This feature may not be available in some markets.*

The website notifies you if an update is available. You can then select to download the update.

You will need an empty USB drive. Please check the website for minimum requirements. Once you have inserted the USB drive into your computer, choose to start the download. Follow the instructions provided to download the files to the USB drive.

The installation of most files occurs in the background, and does not interrupt your use of the system. Navigation (if equipped) updates cannot be installed in the background, because the files are too large.

To install the update in your vehicle, remove anything that is plugged in the USB ports and plug in the USB drive containing the update. When the USB drive is plugged in, the installation should begin immediately. After a successful installation, the update is available the next time the vehicle is started.

When the installation is complete, take the USB drive back to the computer to report the update. Log into your owner account and return to the SYNC software update page and confirm that you have installed the update. Insert the USB drive used for the update into your computer and choose to report your update. The website updates your records to reflect your current software version.

Updating Over Wi-Fi

To update your System over Wi-Fi your vehicle must be within the range of a Wi-Fi access point. Data rates may apply.

To connect your system to Wi-Fi, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
Wi-Fi	
Available Wi-Fi Networks	You can then select your Wi-Fi network. You may have to enter the security code if the network is secured. The system confirms when it has connected to the network.

You must also give the system permission to update automatically. Upon vehicle delivery, the System asks you if you would like to use the automatic update feature. If you agree to automatic updates, you can press OK to confirm. If this selection does not appear upon vehicle delivery you can access it through the General Settings. See **Settings** (page 227). You can also perform a master reset. See **SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting** (page 238).

If you would like to switch this feature on later, select:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	From this menu, you can enable automatic updates. If you have not done so already, the system prompts you to set up a Wi-Fi connection when you enable this feature.

When Wi-Fi and automatic updates are enabled, your system checks for software updates periodically. If a new version is available, it downloads at that time.

Software downloads can take place for up to 30 minutes after you have switched your vehicle off. The updates do not interrupt the normal use of your SYNC 3 system. If a download does not complete for any reason, the download continues where it left off at the next Wi-Fi connected opportunity. Upon activation of an update, a banner displays on the touchscreen indicating the system update. Select the icon to see more detail. This icon displays for two ignition cycles.

To switch this feature off:

Menu Item	
Settings	
General	
Automatic System Updates	In this menu selection, you can change the selection for automatic updates to OFF.

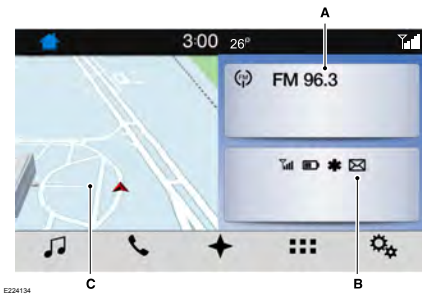
Privacy Information

When you connect a cellular phone to SYNC 3, the system creates a profile within your vehicle that links to that cellular phone. This profile helps in offering you more cellular features and operating more efficiently. Among other things, this profile may contain data about your cellular phone book, text messages (read and unread), and call history, including history of calls when your cell phone was not connected to the system. In addition, if you connect a media device, the system creates and retains an index of supported media content. The system also records a short diagnostic log of approximately 10 minutes of all recent system activity. The log profile and other system data may be used to improve the system and help diagnose any problems that may occur.

The cellular profile, media device index, and diagnostic log remain in your vehicle unless you delete them and are generally accessible only in your vehicle when the cellular phone or media player is connected.

If you no longer plan to use the system or your vehicle, we recommend you perform a Master Reset to erase all stored information. You can find more information about the Master Reset in General Settings. System data cannot be accessed without special equipment and access to your vehicle's SYNC 3 module. Ford Motor Company does not access the system data for any purpose other than as described absent consent, a court order, or where required by law enforcement, other government authorities, or other third parties acting with lawful authority. Other parties may seek to access the information independently of Ford Motor Company.

HOME SCREEN



- A See **Entertainment** (page ?).
- B See **Phone** (page ?).
- C See **Navigation** (page ?).

USING VOICE RECOGNITION

The SYNC 3 system allows you to use voice commands, to control features like audio and climate controls. By using voice commands, you can keep your hands on the wheel and your eyes on the road.

You can access each feature controlled by SYNC 3 through a variety of commands.



To activate the SYNC 3 voice commands push the voice button on the steering wheel and wait for the prompt.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that it can be the name of anything, such as artist, the name of contact or number. The context and the description of the command tell you what to say for this dynamic option.

There are some commands that work for every feature, these commands are:

Voice Command	Action and Description
Main Menu	Brings you to the main menu.
Go back	Returns you to the previous screen.
Cancel	Ends the voice session.
List of Commands	Gives you a list of possible voice commands.
___ List of Commands	You can name any feature and the system gives a list of commands available for the feature. For example, you could say:
	Phone List of Commands
	Navigation List of Commands (If equipped)
Next Page	You can use this command to view the next page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Previous Page	You can use this command to view the previous page of options on any screen where multiple pages of choices are given.
Help	Gives you available commands you can use on the current screen.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Included here are some of the most popular commands for each SYNC 3 feature.

Audio Voice Commands

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for audio voice commands it can be the name of a Sirius channel or a channel number, a radio frequency number, or the name of an artist, album, song or a genre.

To control the media features, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
DAB ¹ AM ___ FM ___	Allows you to tune to a specific FM or AM frequency such as "88.7 FM" or "1580 AM".
Bluetooth Audio	Allows you to listen to music on your Bluetooth-connected device.
USB	Allows you to listen to music on your USB connected device.
Play Genre ___ Play Playlist ___ Play Artist ___ Play Album ___ Play Podcast ___ Play Song ___ Play Audiobook ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, song or a genre to listen to that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you could say "Play artist, The Beatles" or "Play song, Penny Lane".
Browse ___	For USB audio only, you can say the name of an artist, album, or a genre to browse by that selection. Your system must finish indexing before this option is available. For example, you can say "Browse The Beatles" or "Browse folk".

¹If equipped.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Phone Voice Commands

You can use voice commands to connect your Bluetooth-enabled phone to the system.

Pairing a Phone

To pair your phone, press the voice button and when prompted, say:

Voice command	Description
Pair Phone	Follow the on-screen instructions to complete the pairing process. See Settings (page 227).

Making Calls

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for phone voice commands it can be the name of the contact you wish to call or the digits you want to dial.

Press the voice button and say a command similar to the following:

Voice command	Description
Call ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook such as "Call Jenny".
Call ___ at ___	Allows you to call a specific contact from your phonebook at a specific location such as "Call Jenny at Home".
Dial ___	Allows you to dial a specific number such as "Dial 867-5309".

Please make sure that you are saying the contact name exactly as it appears in your contact list.

Once you have provided the digits of the phone number, you can say the following commands:

Voice Command	Description
<0-9>	If the full number was not entered with the first command, you can continue saying the number.
Dial	Tells SYNC 3 to make the phone call.
Delete	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the last block of digits stated.
Clear	Tells SYNC 3 to erase the entire number.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Text Message Voice Commands

To access text message options, press the voice button and say:

Voice command	Description
Listen to Message	
Listen to text message ___	You can say the number of the message you would like to hear.
Reply to Message	

Navigation Voice Commands (If Equipped)

Setting a Destination

You can use any of the following commands to set a destination or find a point of interest.

You can find an address, a point of interest (POI), or search for points of interest by category:

Voice command	Description
Find an Address	Allows you to enter the address search functionality.
Find a ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for such as "Find restaurants".
Find POI	Allows you to enter the POI search functionality.
Find Intersection	Allows you to enter the intersection search functionality.
Destination Nearest ___	State the name of the POI category you would like to search for nearby such as "Destination nearest restaurants".
Destination Previous Destination	Allows you to see a list of your previous destinations.
Destination Home	Allows you to route to your home address.

___ is a dynamic listing, meaning that for navigation voice commands it can be a POI category or an address.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

In addition, you can say these commands when a route is active:

Voice command	Description
Cancel Route	Cancels the current route.
Detour	Allows you to select an alternate route.
Repeat Instruction	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Show Route	Repeats the last guidance prompt.
Where Am I	Provides current location.
Zoom in	Allows you to zoom in on the map.
Zoom out	Allows you to zoom out from the map.

Mobile App Voice Commands (If Equipped)

The following voice commands are always available:

Voice command	Description
Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will prompt you to say the name of an app to start it on SYNC 3.
List Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will list all of the currently available Mobile Apps.
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

There are also voice commands that you can use when app(s) are connected to SYNC 3:

Voice command	Description
Say the name of an app	At any time, you can say the name of a mobile app to start the mobile app on SYNC 3.
Say the name of an app, followed by help	SYNC 3 will list the available voice commands for the specified app if the app is running on SYNC 3.

Voice Settings Commands

You can say the following commands to access the voice settings:

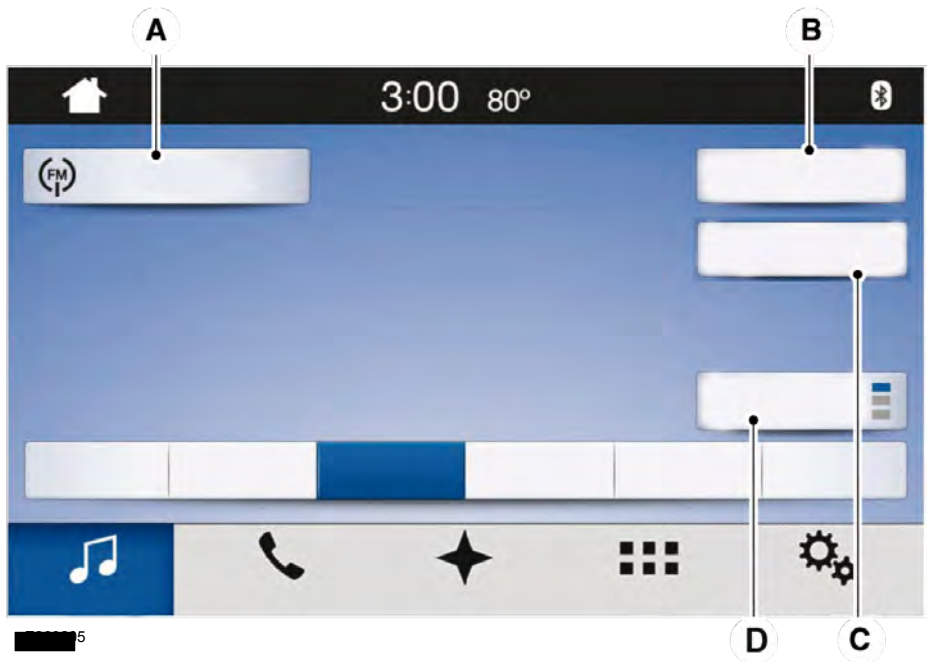
Voice command	Description
Voice Settings	Allows you to enter the voice settings functionality.
Interaction Mode Standard	Sets standard prompting with longer prompts.
Interaction Mode Advanced	Sets advanced prompting with shorter prompts.
Phone Confirmation On	Allows the system to confirm before making a phone call.
Phone Confirmation Off	The system does not confirm before placing a call.
Voice Command Lists On	The system displays a short list of available commands.
Voice Command Lists Off	The system does not display the list of commands.

You can use the volume control to adjust the volume of the system voice prompts. While prompt is active, adjust the volume control up or down to your desired setting.

Note: Depending on the current climate control settings, the fan speed may automatically go down while issuing voice commands or while making and receiving phone calls via SYNC to reduce the amount of background noise in the vehicle. The fan speed automatically returns to normal operation once the voice session ends. you can also adjust the fan speed normally during a voice session, simply press fan buttons (or turn the fan knob) to increase or decrease the fan speed to the setting you desire.

To disable this automatic fan speed reduction feature during voice sessions, press and hold the AC and recirculated air buttons (on the climate control bezel) simultaneously. Then release the buttons and increase fan speed within 2 seconds. To re-enable this feature, repeat the above sequence.

ENTERTAINMENT



Message	Message and description
A	Sources
B	Browse ¹
C	Direct Tune
D	Presets

¹If equipped.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

These options may include:

Item	Description
Direct Tune	A popup appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station.
Traffic (TA)	Allows you to switch Traffic Announcements on and off.
Stations	A list of all available radio stations appears. You can select a station by pressing any list entry on the touchscreen. For more entries, you can scroll down using the up and down arrows, the slider or by swiping down the list.

You can access these options using the touchscreen or voice commands.

Sources

Press this button to select the source of media you want to listen to.

Menu item	
DAB ¹	
AM	
FM	
USB	The name of the USB that is plugged in displays here.
Bluetooth Stereo	
Apps	If you have SYNC 3 compatible apps on your connected smart phone, they display here as individual source selections.

¹If equipped.

AM/FM/DAB Radio

Tuning a Station

You can use the tune or seek controls on the radio bezel to select a station.

To tune a station using the touchscreen, select:

Menu item
Direct Tune

A pop up appears, allowing you to type in the frequency of a station. You can only enter a valid station for the source you are currently listening to.

You can press the backspace button to delete the previously entered number.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Once you have entered the station's call numbers, you can select:

Menu item	Action and description
Enter	Press to begin playing the station you have entered.
Cancel	Press to exit without changing the station.

Presets

To set a new preset, tune to the station

The following buttons are also available:

Item	Description
Browse	You can use the browse button to select a track.
Repeat	Select this button and a small number one displays to indicate the track is set to repeat. For MP3 CDs, this button allows you to toggle through repeat off, repeat one track (a small number one displays), and repeat current folder (a small folder displays).
Shuffle	Select the shuffle symbol to have the audio on the disk play in random order.

You can use the SEEK next, SEEK previous, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

and then press and hold one of the memory preset buttons. The audio mutes briefly while the system saves the station and then returns.

There are two preset banks available for AM and three banks for FM. To access additional presets, tap the preset button. The indicator on the preset button shows which bank of presets you are currently viewing.

CD (If Equipped)

Once you select this source, the system returns you to the main audio screen. The current audio information appears on the screen.

Bluetooth Stereo or USB

Bluetooth Stereo and USB allow you to access media that you store on your Bluetooth device or USB device such as music, audio books or podcasts.

The following buttons are available for Bluetooth and USB:

Button	Function
Repeat	Pressing the repeat button toggles the repeat setting through three modes: repeat off (button not highlighted), repeat all (button highlighted) and repeat track (button highlighted with a small number one).
Shuffle	Play the tracks in random order.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

You can use the forward, reverse, pause or play buttons to control the audio playback.

To get more information about the currently playing track, press the cover art or Info button.

For some devices, SYNC 3 is able to provide 30-second skip buttons when you listen to audio books or podcasts. These buttons allow you to skip forward or backward within a track.

While playing audio from a USB device you can look for certain music by selecting the following:

Button	Function
Browse	If available, displays the list of tracks in the Now Playing playlist.
New Search	This option, which is available under browse, allows you to play all tracks or to filter the available media into one of the below categories.
	Play All
	Playlists
	Artist
	Albums
	Songs
	Genres
	Podcasts
	Audio Books
Composers	
A-Z Jump	This button allows you to choose a specific letter to view within the category you are browsing.
Explore Device	If available, this allows you to browse the folders and files on your USB device.

USB Port



E242003

The USB port is in the center console or behind a small access door in the instrument panel.

This feature allows you to plug in USB media devices, memory sticks, flash drives or thumb drives, and charge devices if they support this feature.

Select this option to play audio from your USB device.

Apps

The system supports the use of certain audio apps such as iHeartRadio through a USB or bluetooth-enabled device.

Each app gives you different on-screen options depending on the app's content. See **Apps** (page 225).

Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information

The system is capable of hosting nearly any digital media player, including iPod, iPhone, and most USB drives.

Supported audio formats include MP3, WMA, WAV, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported audio file extensions include MP3, WMA, WAV, M4A, M4B, AAC, and FLAC.

Supported USB file systems include: FAT, exFAT, and NTFS.

SYNC 3 is also able to organize the media from your USB device by metadata tags. Metadata tags, which are descriptive software identifiers embedded in the media files, provide information about the file.

If your indexed media files contain no information embedded in these metadata tags, SYNC 3 may classify the empty metadata tags as unknown.

SYNC 3 is capable of indexing up to 50,000 songs per USB device, for up to 10 devices.

PHONE

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Hands-free calling is one of the main features of the system. Once you pair your cell phone, you can access many options using the touchscreen or voice commands. While the system supports a variety of features, many are dependent on your cell phone's functionality.

Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add a Bluetooth Device

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for the system on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's make and model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add a Bluetooth Device
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

At a minimum, most cell phones with Bluetooth wireless technology support the following functions:

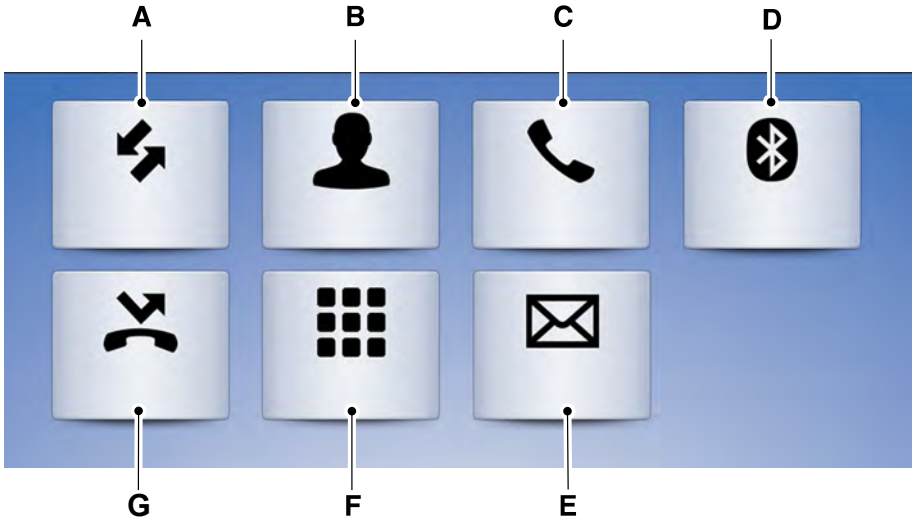
- Answering an incoming call.
- Ending a call.
- Dialing a number.
- Call waiting notification.
- Caller identification.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

Phone Menu

This menu becomes available after pairing a phone.

SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)



E251249

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description			
A	Recent Call List	Displays your recent calls. You can place a call by selecting an entry from this list. You can also sort the calls by selecting the drop down menu at the top of the screen. You can choose:			
		All	Incoming	Outgoing	Missed
B	Contacts	All of your contacts from your phone display in alphabetical order.			
		A-Z Jump		Selecting this button allows you to choose a specific letter to view.	
C	Phone Settings	Displays the name of your phone and takes you to the phone settings options. From this menu, you can pair subsequent devices, set ring tones and alerts.			

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Item	Menu Item	Action and Description
D	Change Device	Gives you access to the list of paired or connected Bluetooth devices allowing you to change or select a device.
E	Text Messages	Displays all recent text messages.
F	Phone Keypad	Use this keypad to dial in a phone number. Use the backspace button to delete numbers.
		Call
G	Do Not Disturb	Touch this button to reject all incoming calls automatically. Text message notifications do not display on the screen. All ringtones and alerts are set to silent.

Users with phones having voice services may see a button to access the feature. For example, iPhone users see a Siri button. A press and hold of the voice button on the steering wheel also accesses this feature.

Making Calls

There are many ways to make calls from the SYNC 3 system, including using voice commands. See **Using Voice Recognition** (page 209). You can use the touchscreen to place calls as well.

To call a number in your contacts, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Contacts	You can then select the name of the contact you want to call. Any numbers stored for that contact display along with any stored contact photos. You can then select the number that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number from your recent calls, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Recent Call List	You can then select an entry that you want to call. The system begins the call.

To call a number that is not stored in your phone, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Phone Keypad	Select the digits of the number you wish to call.
Call	The system begins the call.

Pressing the backspace button deletes the last digit you typed.

Receiving Calls

During an incoming call, an audible tone sounds. Caller information appears in the display if it is available.

To accept the call, select:

Menu Item
Accept

Note: You can also accept the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

To reject the call, select:

Menu Item
Reject

Note: You can also reject the call by pressing the phone button on the steering wheel.

Ignore the call by doing nothing. SYNC 3 logs it as a missed call.

During a Phone Call

During a phone call, the contacts name and number display on the screen along with the call duration.

The phone status items are also visible:

- Signal Strength.
- Battery.

You can select any of the following during an active phone call:

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Item	
End Call	Immediately end a phone call. You can also press the button on the steering wheel.
Keypad	Press this to access the phone keypad.
Mute	You can switch the microphone off so the caller does not hear you.

Item	
Privacy	Transfer the call to the cell phone or back to SYNC 3.

Text Messaging

Note: Downloading and sending text messages using Bluetooth are cell phone-dependent features.

Note: Certain features in text messaging are speed-dependent and not available when your vehicle is traveling at speeds over 5 km/h.

Receiving a Text Message

When a new message arrives, an audible tone sounds and the screen displays a pop-up with the sender name and ID, if supported by your cell phone. You can select:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Hear It	Have SYNC 3 read the message to you.
View	View the text on the touchscreen.
Call	To call the sender.
Reply	You can select from 15 preset messages. Press the message that you would like to use and confirm to send the message. SYNC 3 confirms when the message is sent successfully.
Close	To exit the screen.

Smartphone Connectivity (If Equipped)

SYNC 3 allows you to use Apple CarPlay and Android Auto to access your phone.

When you use Apple CarPlay or Android Auto, you can:

- Make calls.
- Send and receive messages.
- Listen to music.
- Use your phone's voice assistant.

Apple CarPlay and Android Auto disable some SYNC 3 features.

Most Apple CarPlay and Android Auto features use mobile data.

Apple CarPlay

Apple CarPlay requires an iPhone 5 or newer with iOS 7.1 or newer. Updating to the latest iOS version is recommended.

1. Plug your phone into a USB port. See **Entertainment** (page 215).

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

- Follow the prompts on the touchscreen.
- Follow the prompts that appear on your phone to allow access to Apple CarPlay.

After completing the setup, your phone connects to CarPlay automatically when plugged into a USB port.

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Apple CarPlay Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Apple CarPlay. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

To return to SYNC 3, go to the Apple CarPlay home screen and select the SYNC app.

Note: Contact Apple for Apple CarPlay support.

Android Auto

Android Auto is compatible with most devices with Android 5.0 or newer.

- Download the Android Auto app to your device from Google Play to prepare your device (this may require mobile data usage).

Note: The Android Auto App may not be available within your current market.

- Plug your device into a USB port. See **Entertainment** (page 215).
- Follow the prompt on the touchscreen.
- Follow the prompts that appear on your device.

Note: You may be prompted to update additional apps on your device (this may require mobile data usage).

To disable this feature from the Settings screen, select:

Menu Item
Android Auto Preferences
Your device is listed if SYNC detects Android Auto. Select the name of your device and select:
Disable

Note: You may need to slide your Settings screen to the left to select **Apple CarPlay Preferences** or **Android Auto Preferences**.

To return to SYNC 3, select the speedometer icon in the Android Auto menu bar at the bottom of the touchscreen, and then touch the option to return to SYNC.

Note: Contact Google for Android Auto support.

APPS

The system enables voice, steering wheel, and touch screen control of SYNC 3 AppLink enabled smart phone apps. Once an app is running through AppLink, you can control main features of the app through voice commands and steering wheel controls.

Note: Available AppLink enabled apps will vary by market.

Note: You must pair and connect your smart phone via Bluetooth to SYNC 3 to access AppLink.

Note: iPhone users need to connect the phone to the USB port.

Note: For information on available apps, supported smart phone devices and troubleshooting tips please visit the regional Ford website.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Note: Make sure you have an active account for the app that you have downloaded. Some apps will work automatically with no setup. Other apps will want you to configure your personal settings and personalize your experience by creating stations or favorites. We recommend you do this at home or outside of your vehicle.

Note: We encourage you to review the smart phone app's terms of service and privacy policies because Ford is not responsible for your app or its use of data

Note: In order to use an app with SYNC 3, the App needs to be running in the background of your phone. If you shut down the app on your phone, it shuts down the app on SYNC 3 as well.

Note: If a SYNC 3 AppLink compatible app is not shown in the Apps Domain, make sure the required app is running on the mobile device.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Find Mobile Apps	SYNC 3 will search and connect to compatible app(s) running on your mobile device.

Enabling SYNC 3 Mobile Apps

In order to enable mobile apps, SYNC 3 requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

The connected device sends data to Ford in the United States. The information is encrypted and includes your VIN, SYNC 3 module number, anonymous usage statistics and debugging information. Updates may take place automatically.

Note: You must enable mobile apps for each connected device the first time you select a mobile app using the system.

Note: Standard data rates apply. Ford is not responsible for any additional charges you may receive from your service provider, when your vehicle sends or receives data through the connected device. This includes any additional charges incurred due to driving in areas when roaming out of a home network.

You can enable and disable apps through settings. See **Settings** (page 227).

App Permissions

The system organizes the App permissions into groups. You can grant these group permissions individually. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. You can change a permission group status any time when not driving, by using the settings menu. While in the settings menu, you can also see the data included in each group.

When you launch an app using SYNC 3, the system may ask you to grant certain permissions, for example Vehicle information, Driving characteristics, GPS and Speed, and/or Push notifications. You can enable all groups or none of them during the initial app permissions prompts. The settings menu offers individual group permission control.

Note: You are only prompted to grant permissions the first time you use an app with SYNC 3.

Note: If you disable group permissions, apps will still be enabled to work with SYNC 3 unless you deactivate All Apps in the settings menu.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

SETTINGS

Under this menu, you can access and

adjust the settings for many of the system features. To access additional settings, swipe the screen left or right.

Sound

Sound Settings	
Reset All	Returns sound settings to factory levels.
Treble	Adjusts the high frequency level.
Midrange	Adjusts the middle frequency level.
Bass	Adjusts the low frequency level.
Balance / Fade	Adjusts the sound ratio from side to side or front to back.
Speed Compensated Vol.	Adjusts the amount the audio system volume increases with speed, or turns the feature off.
Occupancy Mode	Optimizes the sound based on the location of the listeners.
Sound Settings (If Equipped)	Stereo
	Surround

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Media Player

This button is available when a media device such as a Bluetooth Stereo or USB device is the active audio source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following options for active devices only.

Menu Item	Action and Description		
Podcast Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of podcasts. When a podcast is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster
Audiobook Speed	For some USB devices, SYNC 3 can adjust the playback speed of audiobooks. When an audiobook is playing, you can choose:		
	Slower	Normal	Faster

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Cover Art Priority	Media Player	Cover art displays from your device's music files. If no cover art for the files exists on the device, then the Gracenote Database provides cover art.
	Gracenote®	The Gracenote Database supplied cover art is used for your music files. This overrides any cover art from your device.
Gracenote® Management	Switches on an off Gracenote® to provide metadata information such as genre, artist, album.	
Gracenote® Database Info	This allows you to view the version level of the Gracenote Database.	
Device Information	This allows you to view the manufacturer and model number of your media device.	
Update Media Index	Erase the stored in media information in order to re-index.	

Clock

To adjust the time, select the up and down arrows on either side of the screen. The arrows on the left adjust the hour and arrows on the right adjust the minute. You can then select AM or PM.

Menu Item	Action and Description
Clock Format	Select how time displays.
Auto Time Zone Update	When active, the clock adjusts to time zone changes. This feature is only available in vehicles with navigation.
Reset Clock to GPS Time	When selected, the vehicle clock resets to GPS satellite time.

The system automatically saves any updates you make to the settings.

Bluetooth

Pressing this button allows you to access the following:

SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action
Bluetooth	On
	Off

You must activate Bluetooth to pair a Bluetooth-enabled device.

The processes of pairing a Bluetooth device is the same as pairing a phone. **See Pairing a Device** in Phone settings for how to pair a device and the available options.

Phone

Pair your Bluetooth-enabled phone with the system before using the functions in hands-free mode.

Switch on Bluetooth on your device to begin pairing. See your phone's manual if necessary.

To add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. A prompt alerts you to search for your vehicle's make on your phone.
3. Select your vehicle's model as it displays on your phone.
4. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
5. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.

6. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

Alternatively, to add a phone, select:

Menu Item
Add Phone
Then select:
Discover Other Bluetooth Devices

1. Follow the on-screen instructions.
2. Select your phone's name when it appears on the touchscreen.
3. Confirm that the six-digit number appearing on your phone matches the six-digit number on the touchscreen.
4. The touchscreen indicates when the pairing is successful.
5. Your phone may prompt you to give the system permission to access information. To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the website.

Other features, such as text messaging using Bluetooth and automatic phonebook download, are phone-dependent features.

To check your phone's compatibility, see your phone's manual or visit the regional Ford website.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Once you have paired a device you can adjust the following options.

Menu Item	Action and Description
View Devices	
You can then select:	
Add a Bluetooth Device	You can add a Bluetooth-enabled device by following the steps in the previous table.
You can select a phone by touching the name of the phone on the screen. You then have the following options:	
Connect	Depending on the status of the device, you can select either of these options to interact with the selected device.
Disconnect	
Device Information	Allows you to see phone and device information.
Make Primary	Allows you to select this device to be your preferred device.
Delete	Removes the selected device from the system.

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Manage Contacts		
You can then select:		
Auto-Download Contacts	Enable this option to have SYNC 3 periodically re-download your phonebook to keep your contact list up to date.	
Sort By:	Choose how you would like the system to display your contacts. You can choose:	
	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 50%; text-align: center;">First Name</td> <td style="width: 50%; text-align: center;">Last Name</td> </tr> </table>	First Name
First Name	Last Name	
Re-download Contacts	Select this option to re-download your contact list manually.	
Delete Contacts	Select this option to delete the in vehicle contact list. Deleting the in vehicle list does not erase the contact list on the connected phone.	

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Phone Ringtone	
You can then select:	
No Ringtone	No sound plays when a call comes to your phone.
Use Phone Ringtone	The currently selected ringtone on your phone plays when you receive a call. This option may not be available for all phones. If this option is available, it is the default setting.
You can also select one of the three available ringers.	

Menu Item	Action and Description
Text Messaging	
You can then select:	
Text Messaging	You can select to switch this option on or off.
No Alert (Silence)	No sound plays when a message comes to your phone.
You can select one of the three available notification sounds.	
Voice Readout	When enabled, a voice prompt alerts you when you receive a new message.

You can enable and disable the following options as well:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Mute Audio in Privacy	When enabled, vehicle audio (such as radio or apps) is muted for the duration of the phone call even when the phone call is in privacy.
Roaming Warning	When enabled, an alert displays that your phone is roaming when you attempt to place a call.
Low Battery Notification	When enabled, a message displays when the battery on your phone is running low.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Emergency Assistance (If Equipped)

Select this button to modify the on or off setting for this feature. If the mobile

phone's contacts have been downloaded, you can adjust the following option:

Note: *This feature may not be available in some markets.*

Menu Item	Action and Description
Set Emergency Contacts	You can select up to two numbers from your mobile device's phone-book as emergency contacts for quick access at the end of the Emergency Assistance call process.

Radio

This button is available if a Radio source such as AM or FM is the active media source. Pressing the button allows you to access the following features:

Menu Item	Action and Description
Radio Text	This feature is available when FM or DAB Radio is your active media source. Activate this feature to have the system display radio text.
Autoset Presets (AST)	Refresh
	Selecting this option stores the six strongest stations in your current location to the last preset bank of the currently tuned source.
News Announcements	
Regional	
Alternate frequency	

Your vehicle might not have all of these features.

Navigation (If Equipped)

Map Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Map Preferences	
Then select any of the following:	
3D City Model	When this option is active, the system shows 3D renderings of buildings.

SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Breadcrumbs	When enabled, your vehicle's previously traveled route displays with white dots.	
POI Icons	Enable this feature to display up to 3 POI icons on the navigation map.	
	Once this feature is activated you can select the icons you want displayed by selecting:	Select POIs

Route Preferences

Menu Item	Second Level Messages, Actions and Descriptions		
Route Preferences			
Then select any of the following:			
Preferred Route	Choose to have the system display your chosen route type.		
	Shortest	Fastest	Eco
Always Use ___ Route	Bypass route selection in destination programming. The system only calculates one route based on your preferred route setting.		
Automatically Find Parking	The system searches for and displays available parking locations as you approach your destination.		
Use HOV Lanes	The system selects High Occupancy Vehicle or car pool lanes when providing route guidance. ¹		
Eco Time Penalty	Select a level of cost for the calculated Eco Route. The higher the setting, the longer the time allotment is for the route.		
Dynamic Route Guidance	Switch on or off whether the system considers traffic information when planning a route.		

¹This option may not be available in all markets.

Navigation Preferences

Menu Item	Action and Description
Navigation Preferences	
Guidance Prompts	You can adjust how the system provides prompts.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action and Description
	Then select any of the following:
	Voice and Chimes
	Voice Only
	Tones Only

Note: *The system is not compatible with all mobile apps.*

Mobile Apps

You can enable the control of compatible mobile apps running on your Bluetooth or USB device. In order to enable mobile apps, The system requires user consent to send and receive app authorization information and updates using the data plan associated with the connected device.

Menu Item	Action and Description						
Mobile Apps	Enable or disable the use of mobile apps on the system. Disabling mobile apps in the settings menu disables automatic updates and the use of mobile apps on the system.						
Once Mobile Apps is enabled, you have the following options:							
Update Mobile Apps	This provides information on the current state of available app updates.						
	There are three possible states:						
	<table border="1" style="width: 100%; border-collapse: collapse;"> <tr> <td style="width: 33%;">Update Needed</td> <td style="width: 33%;">Up-To-Date</td> <td style="width: 33%;">Updating Mobile Apps...</td> </tr> <tr> <td>The system detects a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.</td> <td>No update is required.</td> <td>The system is trying to receive an update.</td> </tr> </table>	Update Needed	Up-To-Date	Updating Mobile Apps...	The system detects a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.	No update is required.	The system is trying to receive an update.
	Update Needed	Up-To-Date	Updating Mobile Apps...				
The system detects a new app requiring authorization or a general permissions update is required.	No update is required.	The system is trying to receive an update.					

SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action and Description	
	Request Update	Select this button if an update is required and you want to request this update manually.
All Apps	Grant or deny permissions to all apps at once.	
There may also be enabled apps listed under these options.	Grant or deny an individual app particular permissions. App permissions are organized into groups. By pressing the info book icon, you can see which signals are included in each group.	

Note: Ford is not responsible or liable for any damages or loss of privacy relating to usage of an app, or dissemination of any vehicle data that you approve Ford to provide to an app.

General

Access and adjust the system settings, voice features, as well as phone, navigation and wireless settings.

Menu Item	
Language	Select to have the touchscreen display in one of the selectable languages.
Distance	Select to display units in kilometers or miles.
Temperature	Select to display units in Celsius or Fahrenheit.
Touch Screen Beep	Select to have the system beep to confirm choices made through the touchscreen.
Automatic System Updates	When you activate this option, the system automatically updates when you have an available an Internet connection through a Wi-Fi network or mobile connection.
About	Information pertaining to the system and its software.
Software Licenses	Documentation of the software license for the system.
Master Reset	Select to restore factory defaults. This erases all personal settings and personal data.

Wi-Fi

You can adjust the following:

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Menu Item	Action and Description
Wi-Fi	Enable this option to connect to Wi-Fi for software updates to the system.
View Available Networks	This provides you with a list of available Wi-Fi networks within range.
	Clicking on a network from the list allows you to connect or disconnect from that network. The system may require a security code to connect.
	When you click the information button next to a network, more information about the network displays such as the signal strength, connection status and security type.
Wi-Fi Available Notifications	The system alerts you when your vehicle is parked and a Wi-Fi network is within range if SYNC is not already connected.

Vehicle

Note: *Your vehicle may not have all of these features.*

Camera Settings (If Equipped)

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Message	Action and Description
Camera Settings	
Then select from the following:	
Enhanced Park Aids	When the reverse sensing system detects an object, it displays red, yellow and green highlights at the top of the image.
Rear Camera Delay	You can enable or disable this option using the slider. When this option is on, the rear view camera display is shown for a short time after you shift the vehicle into drive.

See **Rear View Camera** (page 112).

SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Display

To make adjustments using the touchscreen, select:

Menu Item	Action and Description	
Brightness	Make the screen display brighter or dimmer. This is a separate setting from the adjustments you make through the instrument cluster.	
Mode	You can select:	
	Auto	The screen automatically switches between day and night modes based on the outside light level.
	Day	The screen displays with a light background to enhance daytime viewing.
	Night	The screen displays with a darker background to make nighttime viewing easier.
	Off	The screen goes black and does not display anything. To switch the screen back on, simply tap the screen.
Auto Dim	Enable this option to automatically dim the display brightness based on ambient lighting conditions.	

Voice Control

Menu Item	Action and Description
Advanced Mode	Enable this option to remove additional voice prompts and confirmations.
Phone Confirmation	Enable this option to have the system confirm a contacts name with you before making a call.
Voice Command List	Enable this option to have the system display a list of available voice commands when the voice button is pressed.

Valet Mode (If Equipped)

Valet mode allows you to lock the system. No information is accessible until the system is unlocked with the correct PIN.

When you select valet mode a pop up appears informing you that a four digit code must be entered to enable and disable valet mode. You can use any PIN you chose but you must use the same PIN to disable valet mode. The system asks you to input the code.

Note: *If the system locks, and you need to reset the PIN, contact an authorized dealer.*

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

To enable valet mode, enter your chosen PIN. The system then asks to confirm your PIN by reentering it. The system then locks.

To unlock the system, enter the same pin number. The system reconnects to your phone and all of your options are available again.

SYNC™ 3 TROUBLESHOOTING

Your SYNC 3 system is easy to use. However, should questions arise, please refer to the tables below.

To check your cell phone's compatibility, visit the Ford website.

Website
www.fordsync.com

Phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
There is background noise during a phone call.	The audio control settings on your cell phone may be affecting SYNC 3 performance.	Refer to your device's manual about audio adjustments.
During a call, I can hear the other person but they cannot hear me.	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Make sure that the microphone for SYNC 3 is not set to off. Look for the microphone icon on the phone screen.
During a call, I cannot hear the other person and they cannot hear me.	The system may need to be restarted.	To restart your system, shut down the engine, open and close the door, and then lock the door and wait for 2-3 minutes. Make sure that your SYNC 3 screen is black and the lighted USB port is off.
SYNC 3 is not able to download my phonebook.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
		Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The system says "Phone-book down-loaded" but my SYNC 3 phone-book is empty or is missing contacts.	Limitations on your cell phone's capability.	Make sure you allow SYNC 3 to retrieve contacts from your phone. Refer to your cell manual.
		If the missing contacts are stored on your SIM card, move them to your cell phone's memory.
		You must switch on your cell phone and the automatic phonebook download feature on SYNC 3.
I am having trouble connecting my cell phone to SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
		Try deleting your device from SYNC 3 and deleting SYNC from your device, then trying again.
		Always check the security and auto accept prompt settings relative to the SYNC 3 Bluetooth connection on your cell phone.
		Update your cell phone's firmware.
		Switch the auto download setting off.
Text messaging is not working on SYNC 3.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Check your cell phone's compatibility.
	Possible cell phone malfunction.	Try switching your cell phone off, resetting it or removing the battery, then try again.
	iPhone	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> • Go to your iPhone's Settings. • Go to the Bluetooth Menu. • Press the blue circle to the right of the device named with your vehicle make and model to enter the next menu. • Turn Show Notifications on. • Disconnect then reconnect your iPhone from the SYNC 3 system to activate this settings update.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Phone issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
		Your iPhone is now set up to forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3. Repeat these steps for every other SYNC 3 vehicle that you connect. Your iPhone will only forward incoming text messages to SYNC 3 if the iPhone is not unlocked in the text sender's screen of the messaging application. Replying to text messages using SYNC 3 is not supported by iPhone. Text messages from WhatsApp and Facebook Messenger are not supported.
Audible text messages do not work on my cell phone.	This is a cell phone-dependent feature.	Your cell phone must support downloading text messages through Bluetooth to receive incoming text messages.
	This is a cell phone limitation.	Because each cell phone is different, refer to your device's manual for the specific cell phone you are pairing. In fact, there can be differences between cell phones due to brand, model, service provider and software version.

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
I am having trouble connecting my device.	Possible device malfunction.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then reconnect it to SYNC 3.
		Make sure you are using the manufacturer's cable.
		Make sure to correctly insert the USB cable into the device and your vehicle's USB port.
	Make sure that the device does not have an auto-install program or active security settings.	
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

USB and Bluetooth Stereo issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC 3 does not recognize my device when I start my vehicle.	This is a device limitation.	Make sure you are not leaving the device in your vehicle during very hot or cold temperatures.
Bluetooth audio does not stream.	This is a device-dependent feature.	Make sure you connect the device to SYNC 3 and that you have started the media player on your device.
	The device is not connected.	
SYNC 3 does not recognize music that is on my device.	Your music files may not contain the correct artist, song title, album or genre information.	Make sure that all song details are populated.
	The file may be corrupted.	Try replacing the corrupt file with a new version.
	The song may have copyright protection that does not allow it to play.	Some devices require you to change the USB settings from mass storage to media transfer protocol class.
	The file format is not supported by SYNC 3.	Convert the file to a supported format.
	The device needs to be re-indexed.	Update media index. See Settings (page 227).
	The device has a lock screen enabled.	Make sure your device is unlocked before connecting it to SYNC 3.
When I connect my device, I sometimes do not hear any sound.	This is a device limitation.	Disconnect the device from SYNC 3. Try switching your device off, resetting it or removing the battery, then connect it back to SYNC 3.
		To listen to Apple devices through USB, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select Dock Connector.
		To listen to Apple devices through Bluetooth Stereo, select AirPlay from the devices Control Center, then select SYNC.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
Failed connection.	Password error.	Verify password.
	Weak signal.	Check for a poor Wi-Fi signal.
	Multiple Access points within range with the same SSID.	Use a unique name for your SSID, don't use the default name unless it contains a unique identifier, such as part of the MAC address.
Disconnecting after successful connection.	Weak signal probably due to distance from the hotspot, obstruction or high interference.	Position the vehicle close to the hotspot with the front of the vehicle facing the hotspot direction and remove obstacles if possible. Other Wi-Fi, Bluetooth, microwave and cordless phones may cause interference.
Poor signal seen by SYNC 3 despite being near a hotspot.	There may be an obstruction between SYNC 3 and the hotspot.	If the vehicle is equipped with heated windshield, try positioning the vehicle so that the windshield is not facing the hotspot. If you have metallic window tinting but not on the windshield, position the vehicle to face the hotspot. If all windows are tinted, you can open the windows in the direction of the hotspot if that is feasible. Try to remove other obstructions that may impact signal quality such as opening the garage door.
A hotspot is not listed in the list of available networks.	The hotspot was defined as a hidden network.	Please set the network to visible and try again.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Wi-Fi Issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC 3 is not seen when searching for Wi-Fi networks from your phone or other devices.	SYNC 3 does not currently provide a hotspot.	SYNC 3 currently does not provide a hotspot
Software download takes too long.	Poor signal strength, too far from the hotspot, hotspot is supporting multiple connections, slow Internet connection or other problems.	Check the signal quality (under network details), if SYNC 3 indicates good or excellent, test with another high-speed equipped hotspot where the environment is more predictable.
SYNC 3 seems to connect with a hotspot and the signal strength is excellent but the software is not being updated.	It is possible that there is no new software. The connected hotspot may be a managed one and it requires either a subscription or agreeing to the terms and conditions.	Test the connection with another device, if the hotspot requires a subscription, you may contact the service provider.

AppLink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
AppLink Mobile Applications: When I select "Find New Apps," SYNC 3 does not find any applications.	You did not connect an AppLink Compatible phone to SYNC 3.	Make sure you have a compatible smartphone; an Android with OS 2.3 or higher or an iPhone 3GS or newer with iOS 5.0 or higher. Additionally, make sure you pair and connect your phone

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

AppLink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
		to SYNC 3 in order to find AppLink-capable apps on your device. iPhone users must also connect to a USB port with an Apple USB cable.
My phone is connected, but I still cannot find any apps.	AppLink-enabled apps are not installed and running on your mobile device.	Make sure you have downloaded and installed the latest version of the app from your phone's app store. Make sure the app is running on your phone. Some apps require you to register or login to the app on the phone before using them with AppLink. Also, some may have a "Ford SYNC" setting, so check the app's settings menu on the phone.
My phone is connected, my app(s) are running, but I still cannot find any apps.	Sometimes apps do not properly close and re-open their connection to SYNC 3, over ignition cycles, for example.	Closing and restarting apps may help SYNC 3 find the application if you cannot discover it inside the vehicle. On an Android device, if apps have an 'Exit' or 'Quit' option, then select it and restart the app. If the app does not have that option, select the phone's settings menu and select 'Apps', then find the particular app and choose 'Force stop.' Do not forget to restart the app afterward, then select "Find New Apps" on SYNC 3.

SYNCTM 3 (If Equipped)

Applink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
		On an iPhone with iOS7+, to force close an app, double tap the home button then swipe up on the app to close it. Tap the home button again, then select the app again to restart it. After a few seconds, the app should then appear in SYNC 3's Mobile App's Menu.
My Android phone is connected, my app(s) are running, I restarted them, but I still cannot find any apps.	There is a Bluetooth issue on some older versions of the Android operating system that may cause apps that were found on your previous vehicle drive to not be found again if you did not switch Bluetooth off.	Switch Bluetooth off and then on to reset it on your phone. If you are in your vehicle, SYNC 3 should be able to automatically re-connect to your phone if you press the "Phone" button.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

AppLink issues		
Issue	Possible cause(s)	Possible solution(s)
My iPhone is connected, my app is running, I restarted the app but I still cannot find it on SYNC 3.	You may need to reset the USB connection to SYNC 3.	Unplug the USB cable from the phone, wait a moment, and plug the USB cable back in to the phone. After a few seconds, the app should appear in SYNC 3's Mobile Apps Menu. If not, "Force Close" the application and restart it.
I have an Android phone. I found and started my media app on SYNC 3, but there is no sound or the sound is very low.	The Bluetooth volume on the phone may be low.	Increase the Bluetooth volume of the device by using the device's volume control buttons which are most often found on the side of the device.
I can only see some of the AppLink apps running on my phone listed in the SYNC 3 Mobile Apps Menu.	Some Android devices have a limited number of Bluetooth ports that apps can use to connect. If you have more AppLink apps on your phone than the number of available Bluetooth ports, you will not see all of your apps listed in the SYNC 3 mobile apps menu.	Force close or uninstall the apps you do not want SYNC 3 to find. If the app has a "Ford SYNC" setting, disable that setting in the app's settings menu on the phone.

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC 3 does not understand what I am saying.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the cell phone voice commands and the media voice commands at the beginning of their respective sections.
	You may be speaking too soon or at the wrong time.	Refer to the audio display during an active voice session to find a list of voice commands there. Wait for the system to prompt you before you state your command.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
SYNC 3 does not understand the name of a song or artist.	You may be using the wrong voice commands.	Review the media voice commands at the beginning of the media section.
	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your device.	Say the song or artist name exactly as it is displayed on your device. For example, say "Play Artist Prince" or "Play song Purple Rain".
		Make sure you are saying the complete title such as "California remix featuring Jennifer Nettles".
		If there are any abbreviations in the name, like ESPN or CNN, you have to spell those: "E-S-P-N" or "C-N-N".
The song or artist name may have some special characters that are not being recognized by SYNC 3.	Make sure that song titles, artists, album, and playlists names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.	
SYNC 3 does not understand or is calling the wrong contact when I want to make a call.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone-book.	Make sure that you are saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone. For example, if your contact is "Joe Wilson", say "Call Joe Wilson". If your contact name is "Mom", say "Call Mom".
	The contact name may contain special characters.	Make sure that your contact names do not have any special characters like *, - or +.
The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign names stored on my cell phone.	You may not be saying the name exactly as it appears on your phone-book.	SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the contact names stored on your cell phone.
		Helpful Hint: You can select your contact manually. Press PHONE . Select the option for phonebook and then contact name. Press the soft-key option to hear it. SYNC 3 will read the contact name to you, giving you some idea of the pronunciation it is expecting.

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

Voice command issues		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
<p>The SYNC 3 voice control system is having trouble recognizing foreign tracks, artists, albums, genres and playlist names from my media player or USB flash drive.</p>	<p>You may be saying the foreign names using the currently selected language for SYNC 3.</p>	<p>SYNC 3 applies the phonetic pronunciation rules of the selected language to the names stored on your media player or USB flash drive. It is able to make some exceptions for very popular artist names (for example, U2) such that you can always use the English pronunciation for these artists.</p>
<p>The system generates voice prompts and the pronunciation of some words may not be accurate for my language.</p>	<p>SYNC 3 uses text-to-speech voice prompt technology.</p>	<p>SYNC 3 uses a synthetically generated voice rather than pre-recorded human voice.</p> <p>SYNC 3 offers several new voice control features for a wide range of languages. Dialing a contact name directly from the phonebook without pre-recording (for example, "call John Smith") or selecting a track, artist, album, genre or playlist directly from your media player (for example, "play artist Madonna").</p>

SYNC™ 3 (If Equipped)

General		
Issue	Possible cause	Possible solution
The language selected for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display does not match the SYNC 3 language (phone, USB, Bluetooth audio, voice control and voice prompts).	SYNC 3 does not support the currently selected language for the instrument cluster and information and entertainment display.	SYNC 3 supports up to four languages in a single module for text display, voice control and voice prompts. The country where you bought your vehicle dictates the four languages based on the most popular languages spoken. If the selected language is not available, SYNC 3 remains in the current active language.

SYNC 3 System Reset
The system has a System Reset feature that can be performed if the function of a SYNC 3 feature is lost. This reset is intended to restore functionality and will not erase any information previously stored in the system (such as paired devices, phonebook, call history, text messages, or user settings). To perform a System Reset, press and hold the Seek Up (>>) button while pressing and holding the Radio Power button. After approximately 5 seconds the screen will go black. Allow 1-2 minutes for the system reset to complete. You may then resume using the SYNC 3 system.

For additional assistance with SYNC 3 troubleshooting please call or visit the Ford Website.

Ford Support	
Website	www.fordsync.com

Appendices

ELECTROMAGNETIC COMPATIBILITY

WARNINGS



Do not place objects or mount equipment on or near the airbag cover, on the side of the front or rear seatbacks, or in areas that may come into contact with a deploying airbag. Failure to follow these instructions may increase the risk of personal injury in the event of a crash.



Do not fasten antenna cables to vehicle wiring, fuel pipes and brake pipes.

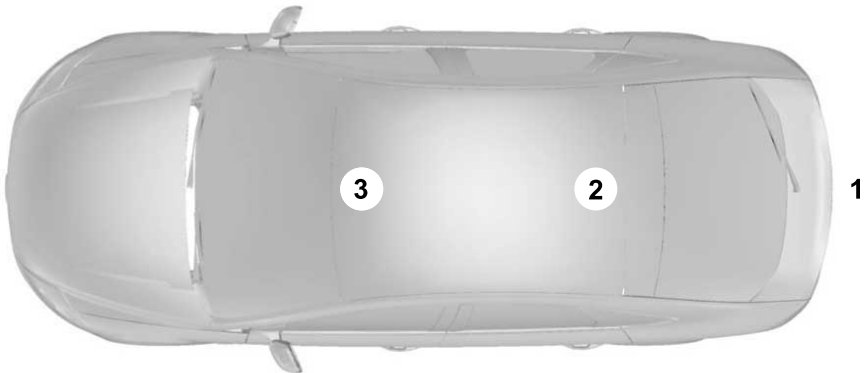


Keep antenna and power cables at least 10 cm from any electronic modules and airbags.

Car

Note: We test and certify your vehicle to meet electromagnetic compatibility legislation (UNECE Regulation 10 or other applicable local requirements). It is your responsibility to make sure that any equipment an authorized dealer installs on your vehicle complies with applicable local legislation and other requirements.

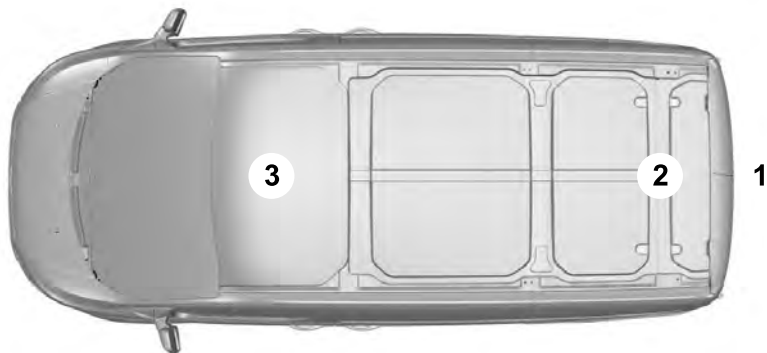
Note: Any radio frequency transmitter equipment in your vehicle (such as cellular telephones and amateur radio transmitters) must keep to the parameters in the following table. We do not provide special provisions or conditions for installations or use.



E239120

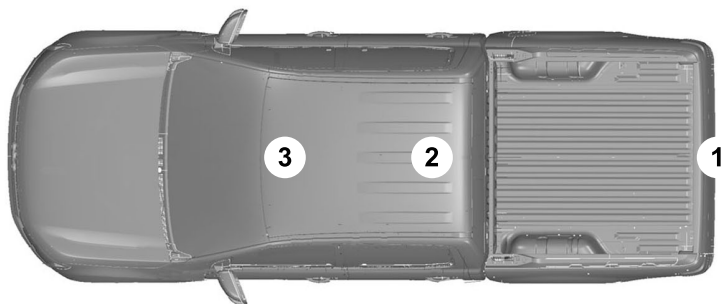
Appendices

Van



E239122

Truck



E239121

Appendices

Frequency Band MHz	Maximum output power Watt (Peak RMS)	Antenna Positions
1-30	50	1
50-54	50	2, 3
68-88	50	2, 3
142-176	50	2, 3
380-512	50	2, 3
806-870	10	2, 3

Note: After the installation of radio frequency transmitters, check for disturbances from and to all electrical equipment in your vehicle, both in the standby and transmit modes.

Check all electrical equipment:

- With the ignition ON.
- With the engine running.
- During a road test at various speeds.

Check that electromagnetic fields generated inside your vehicle cabin by the transmitter installed do not exceed applicable human exposure requirements.

According to management measures for low-power radio wave emitting devices:

Article 12 - Without permission, companies, firms, or users are not allowed to change the frequency, increase the power, or change the features or functionality of the original design of certified low-power radio models.

Article 14 – The use of low-power radios must not affect safety or interfere with legitimate communications. When interference is discovered, operation should be immediately suspended and usage resumed only after improvement to interference-free operations. The aforementioned legitimate

communications refers to wireless communications of telecommunications regulation operations. Low-power radios much endure interference from legitimate communications or industrial and scientific, radio wave emission equipment.

Appendices

END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT

VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)

- You ("You" or "Your" as applicable) have acquired a vehicle having several devices, including SYNC ® and various control modules, ("DEVICES") that include software licensed or owned by Ford Motor Company and its affiliates ("FORD MOTOR COMPANY"). Those software products of FORD MOTOR COMPANY origin, as well as associated media, printed materials, and "online" or electronic documentation ("SOFTWARE") are protected by international intellectual property laws and treaties. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. All rights reserved.
- The SOFTWARE may interface with and/or communicate with, or may be later upgraded to interface with and/or communicate with additional software and/or systems provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY.

IF YOU DO NOT AGREE TO THIS END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT ("EULA") DO NOT USE THE DEVICES OR COPY THE SOFTWARE. ANY USE OF THE SOFTWARE, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO USE ON THE DEVICES, WILL CONSTITUTE YOUR AGREEMENT TO THIS EULA (OR RATIFICATION OF ANY PREVIOUS CONSENT).

GRANT OF SOFTWARE LICENSE: This EULA grants you the following license:

- You may use the SOFTWARE as installed on the DEVICES and as otherwise interfacing with systems and/or services provide by or through FORD MOTOR COMPANY or its third party software and service providers.

Description of Other Rights and Limitations

- **Speech Recognition:** If the SOFTWARE includes speech recognition component(s), you should understand that speech recognition is an inherently statistical process and that recognition errors are inherent in the process. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its suppliers shall be liable for any damages arising out of errors in the speech recognition process. It is your responsibility to monitor any speech recognition functions included in the system.
- **Limitations on Reverse Engineering, Decompilation and Disassembly:** You may not reverse engineer, decompile, translate, disassemble or attempt to discover any source code or underlying ideas or algorithms of the SOFTWARE nor permit others to reverse engineer, decompile or disassemble the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.
- **Limitations on Distributing, Copying, Modifying and Creating Derivative Works:** You may not distribute, copy, make modifications to or create derivative works based on the SOFTWARE, except and only to the extent that such activity is expressly permitted by applicable law notwithstanding this limitation or to the extent as may be permitted by the licensing terms governing use of any open source components included with the SOFTWARE.

Appendices

- **Single EULA:** The end user documentation for the DEVICES and related systems and services may contain multiple EULAs, such as multiple translations and/or multiple media versions (e.g., in the user documentation and in the software). Even if you receive multiple EULAs, you are licensed to use only one (1) copy of the SOFTWARE.
- **SOFTWARE Transfer:** You may permanently transfer your rights under this EULA only as part of a sale or transfer of the DEVICES, provided you retain no copies, you transfer all of the SOFTWARE (including all component parts, the media and printed materials, any upgrades, and, if applicable, the Certificate(s) of Authenticity), and the recipient agrees to the terms of this EULA. If the SOFTWARE is an upgrade, any transfer must include all prior versions of the SOFTWARE.
- **Termination:** Without prejudice to any other rights, FORD MOTOR COMPANY may terminate this EULA if you fail to comply with the terms and conditions of this EULA.
- **Internet-Based Services Components:** The SOFTWARE may contain components that enable and facilitate the use of certain Internet-based services. You acknowledge and agree that FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent may automatically check the version of the SOFTWARE and/or its components that you are utilizing and may provide upgrades or supplements to the SOFTWARE that may be automatically downloaded to your DEVICES.
- **Additional Software/Services:** The SOFTWARE may permit FORD MOTOR COMPANY, third party software and service suppliers, its affiliates and/or its designated agent to provide or make available to you SOFTWARE updates, supplements, add-on components, or Internet-based services components of the SOFTWARE after the date you obtain your initial copy of the SOFTWARE ("Supplemental Components".) SOFTWARE updates may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider. If FORD MOTOR COMPANY or third party software and services suppliers provide or make available to you Supplemental Components and no other EULA terms are provided along with the Supplemental Components, then the terms of this EULA shall apply. FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent reserve the right to discontinue without liability any Internet-based services provided to you or made available to you through the use of the SOFTWARE.

Appendices

- **Links to Third Party Sites:** The SOFTWARE may provide you with the ability to link to third party sites. The third party sites are not under the control of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent. Neither FORD MOTOR COMPANY nor its affiliates nor its designated agent are responsible for (i) the contents of any third party sites, any links contained in third party sites, or any changes or updates to third party sites, or (ii) webcasting or any other form of transmission received from any third party sites. If the SOFTWARE provides links to third party sites, those links are provided to you only as a convenience, and the inclusion of any link does not imply an endorsement of the third party site by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates and/or its designated agent.
- **Obligation to Drive Responsibly:** You recognize your obligation to drive responsibly and keep attention on the road. You will read and abide with the DEVICES operating instructions particularly as they pertain to safety and you agree to assume any risk associated with the use of the DEVICES.

UPGRADES AND RECOVERY MEDIA:

If the SOFTWARE is provided by FORD MOTOR COMPANY separate from the DEVICES on media such as a ROM chip, CD ROM disk(s) or via web download or other means, and is labeled "For Upgrade Purposes Only" or "For Recovery Purposes Only" you may install one (1) copy of such SOFTWARE onto the DEVICES as a replacement copy for the existing SOFTWARE, and use it in accordance with this EULA, including any additional EULA terms accompanying the upgrade SOFTWARE.

INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS:

All title and intellectual property rights in and to the SOFTWARE (including but not limited to any images, photographs, animations, video, audio, music, text and "applets" incorporated into the SOFTWARE), the accompanying printed materials, and any copies of the SOFTWARE, are owned by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, or its affiliates or suppliers. The SOFTWARE is licensed, not sold. You may not copy the printed materials accompanying the SOFTWARE. All title and intellectual property rights in and to the content which may be accessed through use of the SOFTWARE is the property of the respective content owner and may be protected by applicable copyright or other intellectual property laws and treaties. This EULA grants you no rights to use such content outside its intended use. All rights not specifically granted under this EULA are reserved by FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers and suppliers. Use of any on-line services which may be accessed through the SOFTWARE may be governed by the respective terms of use relating to such services. If this SOFTWARE contains documentation that is provided only in electronic form, you may print one copy of such electronic documentation.

EXPORT RESTRICTIONS: You acknowledge that the SOFTWARE is subject to U.S. and European Union export jurisdiction. You agree to comply with all applicable international and national laws that apply to the SOFTWARE, including the U.S. Export Administration Regulations, as well as end-user, end-use and destination restrictions issued by U.S. and other governments.

Appendices

TRADEMARKS: This EULA does not grant you any rights in connection with any trademarks or service marks of FORD MOTOR COMPANY, its affiliates, and third party software and service providers.

PRODUCT SUPPORT: Please refer to FORD MOTOR COMPANY instructions provided in the documentation for the DEVICES product support, such as the vehicle owner guide.

Should you have any questions concerning this EULA, or if you desire to contact FORD MOTOR COMPANY for any other reason, please refer to the address provided in the documentation for the DEVICES.

No Liability for Certain Damages: EXCEPT AS PROHIBITED BY LAW, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR SERVICES SUPPLIERS, AND THEIR AFFILIATES SHALL HAVE NO LIABILITY FOR ANY INDIRECT, SPECIAL, CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES ARISING FROM OR IN CONNECTION WITH THE USE OR PERFORMANCE OF THE SOFTWARE. THIS LIMITATION SHALL APPLY EVEN IF ANY REMEDY FAILS OF ITS ESSENTIAL PURPOSE. THERE ARE NO WARRANTIES OTHER THAN THOSE THAT MAY BE EXPRESSLY PROVIDED FOR YOUR NEW VEHICLE.

SYNC® Automotive Important Safety Information Read and follow instructions:

- Before using your SYNC® system, read and follow all instructions and safety information provided in this end user manual ("Owner Guide".) Not following precautions found in the Owner Guide can lead to an accident or other serious injuries.

General Operation

- **Voice Command Control:** Certain functions within the SYNC® system may be accomplished using voice commands. Using voice commands while driving helps you to operate the system without removing your hands from the wheel or eyes from the road.
- **Prolonged Views of Screen:** Do not access any function requiring a prolonged view of the screen while you are driving. Pull over in a safe and legal manner before attempting to access a function of the system requiring prolonged attention.
- **Volume Setting:** Do not raise the volume excessively. Keep the volume at a level where you can still hear outside traffic and emergency signals while driving. Driving while unable to hear these sounds could cause an accident.
- **Navigation Features:** Any navigation features included in the system are intended to provide turn by turn instructions to get you to a desired destination. Please make certain all persons using this system carefully read and follow instructions and safety information fully.
- **Distraction Hazard:** Any navigation features may require manual (non-verbal) setup. Attempting to perform such set-up or insert data while driving can distract your attention and could cause an accident or other serious injury. Stop the vehicle in a safe and legal manner before attempting these operations.
- **Let Your Judgment Prevail:** Any navigation features are provided only as an aid. Make your driving decisions based on your observations of local conditions and existing traffic regulations. Any such feature is not a

Appendices

substitute for your personal judgment. Any route suggestions made by this system should never replace any local traffic regulations or your personal judgment or knowledge of safe driving practices.

- **Route Safety:** Do not follow the route suggestions if doing so would result in an unsafe or illegal maneuver, if you would be placed in an unsafe situation, or if you would be directed into an area that you consider unsafe. The driver is ultimately responsible for the safe operation of the vehicle and therefore, must evaluate whether it is safe to follow the suggested directions.
- **Potential Map Inaccuracy:** Maps used by this system may be inaccurate because of changes in roads, traffic controls or driving conditions. Always use good judgment and common sense when following the suggested routes.
- **Emergency Services:** Do not rely on any navigation features included in the system to route you to emergency services. Ask local authorities or an emergency services operator for these locations. Not all emergency services such as police, fire stations, hospitals and clinics are likely to be contained in the map database for such navigation features.

Your Responsibilities and Assumptions of Risk

- You agree to each of the following:(a) Any use of the SOFTWARE while driving an automobile or other vehicle in violation of applicable law or otherwise driving in an unsafe manner presents a significant risk of distracted driving and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(b) Use of the SOFTWARE at excessive volume poses a significant risk of hearing damage and should not be attempted under any circumstances;(c) The SOFTWARE may not be compatible with new or different versions of an operating system, third party software, or third party services, and the SOFTWARE may potentially cause a critical failure of an operating system, third party software, or third party service.(d) Any third party service accessed by or third party software used with the SOFTWARE (i) may charge an additional fee for access, (ii) may not work correctly, on an uninterrupted basis, or error free, (iii) may change streaming formats or discontinue operation, (iv) may contain adult, profane or offensive content; and (v) may contain inaccurate, false or misleading traffic, weather, financial or safety information or other content; and (e) Use of the SOFTWARE may cause you to incur additional charges from your wireless service provider (WSP) and any data or minute calculators that may be included in the software program are for reference only, are not warranted in any way and should not be relied upon in anyway.
- When using the SOFTWARE, you agree to be responsible for and assume the entire risk to the items set forth in Section (a) – (e) above.

Appendices

Disclaimer of Warranty

YOU EXPRESSLY ACKNOWLEDGE AND AGREE THAT USE OF THE DEVICES AND SOFTWARE IS AT YOUR SOLE RISK AND THAT THE ENTIRE RISK AS TO SATISFACTORY QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, COMPATIBILITY, ACCURACY AND EFFORT IS WITH YOU. TO THE MAXIMUM EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, THE SOFTWARE AND ANY THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES ARE PROVIDED "AS IS" AND "AS AVAILABLE", WITH ALL FAULTS AND WITHOUT WARRANTY OF ANY KIND, AND FORD MOTOR COMPANY HEREBY DISCLAIMS ALL WARRANTIES AND CONDITIONS WITH RESPECT TO THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, AND THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, EITHER EXPRESS, IMPLIED OR STATUTORY, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES AND/OR CONDITIONS OF MERCHANTABILITY, OF SATISFACTORY QUALITY, OF FITNESS FOR AN PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OF ACCURACY, OF QUIET ENJOYMENT, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD-PARTY RIGHTS. FORD MOTOR COMPANY DOES NOT WARRANT (a) AGAINST INTERFERENCE WITH YOUR ENJOYMENT OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES, (b) THAT THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL MEET YOUR REQUIREMENTS, (c) THAT THE OPERATION OF THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED OR ERROR-FREE, (d) OR THAT DEFECTS IN THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES WILL BE CORRECTED. NO ORAL OR WRITTEN INFORMATION OR ADVICE GIVEN BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY OR ITS AUTHORIZED REPRESENTATIVE SHALL

CREATE A WARRANTY. SHOULD THE SOFTWARE, THIRD PARTY SOFTWARE, OR THIRD-PARTY SERVICES PROVE DEFECTIVE, YOU ASSUME THE ENTIRE COST OF ALL NECESSARY SERVICING, REPAIR OR CORRECTION. SOME JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE DISCLAIMER OF IMPLIED WARRANTIES OR LIMITATIONS ON APPLICABLE STATUTORY RIGHTS OF A CONSUMER, SO THE ABOVE DISCLAIMER MAY NOT FULLY APPLY TO YOU. THE SOLE WARRANTY PROVIDED BY FORD MOTOR COMPANY SHALL BE FOUND IN THE WARRANTY INFORMATION INCLUDING WITH YOUR OWNER GUIDE. TO THE EXTENT THAT THERE IS ANY CONFLICT BETWEEN THE TERMS OF THIS SECTION AND THE WARRANTY BOOKLET, THE WARRANTY BOOKLET SHALL CONTROL.

Applicable Law, Venue, Jurisdiction

- The laws of the State of Michigan govern this EULA and Your use of the SOFTWARE. Your use of the SOFTWARE may also be subject to other local, state, national, or international laws. Any litigation arising out of or related to this EULA shall be brought and maintained exclusively in a court of the State of Michigan located in Wayne County or in the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan. You hereby consent to submit to the personal jurisdiction of a court in the State of Michigan located in Wayne County and the United States District Court for the Eastern District of Michigan for any dispute arising out of or relating to this EULA.

Appendices

Binding Arbitration and Class Action Waiver

(a) Application. This Section applies to any dispute EXCEPT IT DOES NOT INCLUDE A DISPUTE RELATING TO COPYRIGHT INFRINGEMENT, OR TO THE ENFORCEMENT OR VALIDITY OF YOUR, FORD MOTOR COMPANY, OR ANY OF FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S LICENSORS' INTELLECTUAL PROPERTY RIGHTS. Dispute means any dispute, action, or other controversy between You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, other than the exceptions listed above, concerning the SOFTWARE (including its price) or this EULA, whether in contract, warranty, tort, statute, regulation, ordinance, or any other legal or equitable basis.

(b) Notice of Dispute. In the event of a Dispute, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY must give the other a "Notice of Dispute", which is a written statement of the name, address, and contact information of the party giving it, the facts giving rise to the dispute, and the relief requested. You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY will attempt to resolve any dispute through informal negotiation within 60 days from the date the Notice of Dispute is sent. After 60 days, You or FORD MOTOR COMPANY may commence arbitration.

(c) Small claims court. You may also litigate any dispute in small claims court in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business, if the dispute meets all requirements to be heard in the small claims court. You may litigate in small claims court whether or not You negotiated informally first.

(d) Binding arbitration. If You and FORD MOTOR COMPANY, do not resolve any dispute by informal negotiation or in small claims court, any other effort to resolve the dispute will be conducted exclusively by binding arbitration. You are giving up

the right to litigate (or participate in as a party or class member) all disputes in court before a judge or jury. Instead, all disputes will be resolved before a neutral arbitrator, whose decision will be final except for a limited right of appeal under the Federal Arbitration Act. Any court with jurisdiction over the parties may enforce the arbitrator's award.

(e) Class action waiver. Any proceedings to resolve or litigate any dispute in any forum will be conducted solely on an individual basis. Neither you nor FORD MOTOR COMPANY, will seek to have any dispute heard as a class action, as a private attorney general action, or in any other proceeding in which any party acts or proposes to act in a representative capacity. No arbitration or proceeding will be combined with another without the prior written consent of all parties to all affected arbitrations or proceedings.

(f) Arbitration procedure. Any arbitration will be conducted by the American Arbitration Association (the "AAA"), under its Commercial Arbitration Rules. If You are an individual and use the SOFTWARE for personal or vehicle use, or if the value of the dispute is \$75,000 or less whether or not You are an individual or how You use the SOFTWARE, the AAA Supplementary Procedures for Consumer-Related Disputes will also apply. To commence arbitration, submit a Commercial Arbitration Rules Demand for Arbitration form to the AAA. You may request a telephonic or in-person hearing by following the AAA rules. In a dispute involving \$10,000 or less, any hearing will be telephonic unless the arbitrator finds good cause to hold an in-person hearing instead. For more information, see adr.org or call 1-800-778-7879. You agree to commence arbitration only in your county of residence or FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S principal place of business. The arbitrator

Appendices

may award the same damages to You individually as a court could. The arbitrator may award declaratory or injunctive relief only to You individually, and only to the extent required to satisfy Your individual claim.

(g) Arbitration fees and incentives.

- i. Disputes involving \$75,000 or less. FORD MOTOR COMPANY will promptly reimburse your filing fees and pay the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses. If you reject FORD MOTOR COMPANY'S last written settlement offer made before the arbitrator was appointed ("last written offer"), your dispute goes all the way to an arbitrator's decision (called an "award"), and the arbitrator awards you more than the last written offer, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will give you three incentives: (1) pay the greater of the award or \$1,000; (2) pay twice your reasonable attorney's fees, if any; and (3) reimburse any expenses (including expert witness fees and costs) that your attorney reasonably accrues for investigating, preparing, and pursuing your claim in arbitration. The arbitrator will determine the amounts.
- ii. Disputes involving more than \$75,000. The AAA rules will govern payment of filing fees and the AAA's and arbitrator's fees and expenses.
- iii. Disputes involving any amount. In any arbitration you commence, FORD MOTOR COMPANY will seek its AAA or arbitrator's fees and expenses, or Your filing fees it reimbursed, only if the arbitrator finds the arbitration frivolous or brought for an improper purpose. In any arbitration FORD MOTOR COMPANY commences, it will pay all

filing, AAA, and arbitrator's fees and expenses. It will not seek its attorney's fees or expenses from you in any arbitration. Fees and expenses are not counted in determining how much a dispute involves.

(h) Claims or disputes must be filed within one year. To the extent permitted by law, any claim or dispute under this EULA to which this Section applies must be filed within one year in small claims court (Section c) or in arbitration (Section d). The one-year period begins when the claim or dispute first could be filed. If such a claim or dispute is not filed within one year, it is permanently barred.

(i) Severability. If the class action waiver (Section e) is found to be illegal or unenforceable as to all or some parts of a dispute, then that portion of Section e will not apply to those parts. Instead, those parts will be severed and proceed in a court of law, with the remaining parts proceeding in arbitration. If any other provision of that portion Section e is found to be illegal or unenforceable, that provision will be severed with the remainder of Section e remaining in full force and effect.

Telenav Software End User License Agreement

Please read these terms and conditions carefully before you use the TeleNav Software. Your use of the TeleNav Software indicates that you accept these terms and conditions. If you do not accept these terms and conditions, do not break the seal of the package, launch, or otherwise use the TeleNav Software. TeleNav may revise this Agreement and the privacy policy at any time, with or without notice to you. You agree to visit <http://www.telenav.com> from time to time to review the then current version of this Agreement and of the privacy policy.

Appendices

1. Safe and Lawful Use

You acknowledge that devoting attention to the TeleNav Software may pose a risk of injury or death to you and others in situations that otherwise require your undivided attention, and you therefore agree to comply with the following when using the TeleNav Software:

- (a) observe all traffic laws and otherwise drive safely;
- (b) use your own personal judgment while driving. If you feel that a route suggested by the TeleNav Software instructs you to perform an unsafe or illegal maneuver, places you in an unsafe situation, or directs you into an area that you consider to be unsafe, do not follow such instructions;
- (c) do not input destinations, or otherwise manipulate the TeleNav Software, unless your vehicle is stationary and parked;
- (d) do not use the TeleNav Software for any illegal, unauthorized, unintended, unsafe, hazardous, or unlawful purposes, or in any manner inconsistent with this Agreement;
- (e) arrange all GPS and wireless devices and cables necessary for use of the TeleNav Software in a secure manner in your vehicle so that they will not interfere with your driving and will not prevent the operation of any safety device (such as an airbag).

You agree to indemnify and hold TeleNav harmless against all claims resulting from any dangerous or otherwise inappropriate use of the TeleNav Software in any moving vehicle, including as a result of your failure to comply with the directions above.

2. Account Information

You agree: (a) when registering the TeleNav Software, to provide TeleNav with true, accurate, current, and complete information about yourself, and (b) to inform TeleNav promptly of any changes to such information, and to keep it true, accurate, current and complete.

3. Software License

- Subject to your compliance with the terms of this Agreement, TeleNav hereby grants to you a personal, non-exclusive, non-transferable license (except as expressly permitted below in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software license), without the right to sublicense, to use the TeleNav Software (in object code form only) in order to access and use the TeleNav Software. This license shall terminate upon any termination or expiration of this Agreement. You agree that you will use the TeleNav Software only for your personal business or leisure purposes, and not to provide commercial navigation services to other parties.

3.1 License Limitations

- **(a)** reverse engineer, decompile, disassemble, translate, modify, alter or otherwise change the TeleNav Software or any part thereof; **(b)** attempt to derive the source code, audio library or structure of the TeleNav Software without the prior express written consent of TeleNav; **(c)** remove from the TeleNav Software, or alter, any of TeleNav's or its suppliers' trademarks, trade names, logos, patent or copyright notices, or other notices or markings; **(d)**

Appendices

distribute, sublicense or otherwise transfer the TeleNav Software to others, except as part of your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software; or **(e)** use the TeleNav Software in any manner that

- i. infringes the intellectual property or proprietary rights, rights of publicity or privacy or other rights of any party,
- ii. violates any law, statute, ordinance or regulation, including but not limited to laws and regulations related to spamming, privacy, consumer and child protection, obscenity or defamation, or
- iii. is harmful, threatening, abusive, harassing, tortuous, defamatory, vulgar, obscene, libelous, or otherwise objectionable; and (f) lease, rent out, or otherwise permit unauthorized access by third parties to the TeleNav Software without advanced written permission of TeleNav.

4. Disclaimers

- To the fullest extent permissible pursuant to applicable law, in no event will TeleNav, its licensors and suppliers, or agents or employees of any of the foregoing, be liable for any decision made or action taken by you or anyone else in reliance on the information provided by the TeleNav Software. TeleNav also does not warrant the accuracy of the map or other data used for the TeleNav Software. Such data may not always reflect reality due to, among other things, road closures, construction, weather, new roads and other changing conditions. You are responsible for the entire risk arising out of your use of the TeleNav Software. For example but without limitation, you agree not to rely on the TeleNav Software for critical navigation in areas where the well-being or survival of you or others

is dependent on the accuracy of navigation, as the maps or functionality of the TeleNav Software are not intended to support such high risk applications, especially in more remote geographical areas.

- TELENAV EXPRESSLY DISCLAIMS AND EXCLUDES ALL WARRANTIES IN CONNECTION WITH THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, WHETHER STATUTORY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING ALL WARRANTIES WHICH MAY ARISE FROM COURSE OF DEALING, CUSTOM OR TRADE AND INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, THE IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE AND NON-INFRINGEMENT OF THIRD PARTY RIGHTS WITH RESPECT TO THE TELENAV SOFTWARE.
- Certain jurisdictions do not permit the disclaimer of certain warranties, so this limitation may not apply to you.

5. Limitation of Liability

- TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED UNDER APPLICABLE LAW, UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS BE LIABLE TO YOU OR TO ANY THIRD PARTY FOR ANY INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, CONSEQUENTIAL, SPECIAL OR EXEMPLARY DAMAGES (INCLUDING IN EACH CASE, BUT NOT LIMITED TO, DAMAGES FOR THE INABILITY TO USE THE EQUIPMENT OR ACCESS DATA, LOSS OF DATA, LOSS OF BUSINESS, LOSS OF PROFITS, BUSINESS INTERRUPTION OR THE LIKE) ARISING OUT OF THE USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THE TELENAV SOFTWARE, EVEN IF TELENAV HAS BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. NOTWITHSTANDING ANY DAMAGES THAT YOU MIGHT INCUR FOR ANY

Appendices

REASON WHATSOEVER (INCLUDING, WITHOUT LIMITATION, ALL DAMAGES REFERENCED HEREIN AND ALL DIRECT OR GENERAL DAMAGES IN CONTRACT, TORT (INCLUDING NEGLIGENCE) OR OTHERWISE), THE ENTIRE LIABILITY OF TELENAV AND OF ALL OF TELENAV'S SUPPLIERS SHALL BE LIMITED TO THE AMOUNT ACTUALLY PAID BY YOU FOR THE TELENAV SOFTWARE. SOME STATES AND/OR JURISDICTIONS DO NOT ALLOW THE EXCLUSION OR LIMITATION OF INCIDENTAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES, SO THE ABOVE LIMITATIONS OR EXCLUSIONS MAY NOT APPLY TO YOU.

6. Arbitration and Governing Law

- You agree that any dispute, claim or controversy arising out of or relating to this Agreement or the TeleNav Software shall be settled by independent arbitration involving a neutral arbitrator and administered by the American Arbitration Association in the County of Santa Clara, California. The arbitrator shall apply the Commercial Arbitration Rules of the American Arbitration Association, and the judgment upon the award rendered by the arbitrator may be entered by any court having jurisdiction. Note that there is no judge or jury in an arbitration proceeding and the decision of the arbitrator shall be binding upon both parties. You expressly agree to waive your right to a jury trial. This Agreement and performance hereunder will be governed by and construed in accordance with the laws of the State of California, without giving effect to its conflict of law provisions. To the extent judicial action is necessary in connection with the binding arbitration, both TeleNav and you agree to submit

to the exclusive jurisdiction of the courts of the County of Santa Clara, California. The United Nations Convention on Contracts for the International Sale of Goods shall not apply.

7. Assignment

- You may not resell, assign, or transfer this Agreement or any of your rights or obligations, except in totality, in connection with your permanent transfer of the TeleNav Software, and expressly conditioned upon the new user of the TeleNav Software agreeing to be bound by the terms and conditions of this Agreement. Any such sale, assignment or transfer that is not expressly permitted under this paragraph will result in immediate termination of this Agreement, without liability to TeleNav, in which case you and all other parties shall immediately cease all use of the TeleNav Software. Notwithstanding the foregoing, TeleNav may assign this Agreement to any other party at any time without notice, provided the assignee remains bound by this Agreement.

8. Miscellaneous

8.1

This Agreement constitutes the entire agreement between TeleNav and you with respect to the subject matter hereof.

8.2

Except for the limited licenses expressly granted in this Agreement, TeleNav retains all right, title and interest in and to the TeleNav Software, including without limitation all related intellectual property rights. No licenses or other rights which are not expressly granted in this Agreement are intended to, or shall be, granted or

Appendices

conferred by implication, statute, inducement, estoppel or otherwise, and TeleNav and its suppliers and licensors hereby reserve all of their respective rights other than the licenses explicitly granted in this Agreement.

8.3

By using the TeleNav Software, you consent to receive from TeleNav all communications, including notices, agreements, legally required disclosures or other information in connection with the TeleNav Software (collectively, "Notices") electronically. TeleNav may provide such Notices by posting them on TeleNav's Website or by downloading such Notices to your wireless device. If you desire to withdraw your consent to receive Notices electronically, you must discontinue your use of the TeleNav Software.

8.4

TeleNav's or your failure to require performance of any provision shall not affect that party's right to require performance at any time thereafter, nor shall a waiver of any breach or default of this Agreement constitute a waiver of any subsequent breach or default or a waiver of the provision itself.

8.5

If any provision herein is held unenforceable, then such provision will be modified to reflect the intention of the parties, and the remaining provisions of this Agreement will remain in full force and effect.

8.6

The headings in this Agreement are for convenience of reference only, will not be deemed to be a part of this Agreement, and will not be referred to in connection with the construction or interpretation of this Agreement. As used in this Agreement, the words "include" and "including" and variations thereof, will not be deemed to be terms of limitation, but rather will be deemed to be followed by the words "without limitation".

9. Other Vendors Terms and Conditions

- The Telenav Software utilizes map and other data licensed to Telenav by third party vendors for the benefit of you and other end users. This Agreement includes end-user terms applicable to these companies (included at the end of this Agreement), and thus your use of the Telenav Software is also subject to such terms. You agree to comply with the following additional terms and conditions, which are applicable to Telenav's third party vendor licensors::

9.1 End User Terms Required by HERE North America, LLC

The data ("Data") is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and Telenav ("Telenav") and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand.

© 2013 HERE. All rights reserved.

The Data for areas of Canada includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including: © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © Department of Natural Resources Canada.

Appendices

HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.

©United States Postal Service® 2014. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4

The Data for Mexico includes certain data from Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía.

9.2 End User Terms Required by NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd

The data (“Data”) is provided for your personal, internal use only and not for resale. It is protected by copyright, and is subject to the following terms and conditions which are agreed to by you, on the one hand, and NAV2 (Shanghai) Co., Ltd (“NAV2”) and its licensors (including their licensors and suppliers) on the other hand. 20xx. All rights reserved

Terms and Conditions

Permitted Use. You agree to use this Data together with the Telenav Software solely for the internal business and personal purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble, create any derivative works of, or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions. Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by Telenav, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not use this Data (a) with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs.

Warning. The Data may contain inaccurate or incomplete information due to the passage of time, changing circumstances, sources used and the nature of collecting comprehensive geographic data, any of which may lead to incorrect results.

No Warranty. This Data is provided to you “as is,” and you agree to use it at your own risk. Telenav and its licensors (and their licensors and suppliers) make no guarantees, representations or warranties of any kind, express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, content, quality, accuracy, completeness, effectiveness, reliability, fitness for a particular purpose, usefulness, use or results to be obtained from this Data, or that the Data or server will be uninterrupted or error-free.

Disclaimer of Warranty: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A

Appendices

PARTICULAR PURPOSE OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain warranty exclusions, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Disclaimer of Liability: TELENAV AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF TELENAV OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. Some States, Territories and Countries do not allow certain liability exclusions or damages limitations, so to that extent the above may not apply to you.

Export Control. You shall not export from anywhere any part of the Data or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations, including but not limited to the laws, rules and regulations administered by the Office of Foreign Assets Control of the U.S. Department of Commerce and the Bureau of Industry and Security of the U.S. Department of Commerce. To the extent that any such

export laws, rules or regulations prohibit HERE from complying with any of its obligations hereunder to deliver or distribute Data, such failure shall be excused and shall not constitute a breach of this Agreement.

Entire Agreement. These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between Telenav (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Governing Law. The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the State of Illinois [insert "Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used], without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. You agree to submit to the jurisdiction of the State of Illinois [insert "The Netherlands" where European HERE Data is used] for any and all disputes, claims and actions arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder.

Government End Users. If the Data is being acquired by or on behalf of the United States government or any other entity seeking or applying rights similar to those customarily claimed by the United States government, this Data is a "commercial item" as that term is defined at 48 C.F.R. ("FAR") 2.101, is licensed in accordance with these End-User Terms, and each copy of Data delivered or otherwise furnished shall be marked and embedded as appropriate with the following "Notice of Use," and shall be treated in accordance with such Notice:

Appendices

NOTICE OF USE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) NAME: HERE

CONTRACTOR (MANUFACTURER/
SUPPLIER) ADDRESS: c/o Nokia, 425
West Randolph Street, Chicago, Illinois
60606

This Data is a commercial item as
defined in FAR 2.101 and is subject to
these End-User Terms under which this
Data was provided.

© 1987 – 2014 HERE – All rights reserved.

If the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official refuses to use the legend provided herein, the Contracting Officer, federal government agency, or any federal official must notify HERE prior to seeking additional or alternative rights in the Data.

I. US/Canada Territory

A. United States Data. The End-User Terms for any Application containing Data for the United States shall contain the following notices:

“HERE holds a non-exclusive license from the United States Postal Service® to publish and sell ZIP+4® information.”

“©United States Postal Service® 20XX. Prices are not established, controlled or approved by the United States Postal Service®. The following trademarks and registrations are owned by the USPS: United States Postal Service, USPS, and ZIP+4.”

B. Canada Data. The following provisions apply to the Data for Canada, which may include or reflect data from third party licensors (“Third Party Data”), including Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada (“Her Majesty”), Canada Post Corporation (“Canada Post”) and the Department of Natural Resources of Canada (“NRCan”):

1. Disclaimer and Limitation: Client agrees that its use of the Third Party Data is subject to the following provisions:

a. Disclaimer: The Third Party Data is licensed on an “as is” basis. The licensors of such data, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data, either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose.

b. Limitation on Liability: The Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable: (i) in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of such Data; or (ii) in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the Data.

Appendices

2. Copyright Notice: In connection with each copy of all or any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada, Client shall affix in a conspicuous manner the following copyright notice on at least one of: (i) the label for the storage media of the copy; (ii) the packaging for the copy; or (iii) other materials packaged with the copy, such as user manuals or end user license agreements: "This data includes information taken with permission from Canadian authorities, including © Her Majesty the Queen in Right of Canada, © Queen's Printer for Ontario, © Canada Post Corporation, GeoBase®, © The Department of Natural Resources Canada. All rights reserved."

3. End-User Terms: Except as otherwise agreed by the parties, in connection with the provision of any portion of the Data for the Territory of Canada to End-Users as may be authorized under the Agreement, Client shall provide such End-Users, in a reasonably conspicuous manner, with terms (set forth with other end user terms required to be provided under the Agreement, or as otherwise may be provided, by Client) which shall include the following provisions on behalf of the Third Party Data licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan:

The Data may include or reflect data of licensors, including Her Majesty the Queen in the Right of Canada ("Her Majesty"), Canada Post Corporation ("Canada Post") and the Department of Natural Resources Canada ("NRCan"). Such data is licensed on an "as is" basis. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, make no guarantees, representations or warranties respecting such data,

either express or implied, arising by law or otherwise, including but not limited to, effectiveness, completeness, accuracy or fitness for a particular purpose. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in respect of any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action alleging any loss, injury or damages, direct or indirect, which may result from the use or possession of the data or the Data. The licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, shall not be liable in any way for loss of revenues or contracts, or any other consequential loss of any kind resulting from any defect in the data or the Data.

End User shall indemnify and save harmless the licensors, including Her Majesty, Canada Post and NRCan, and their officers, employees and agents from and against any claim, demand or action, irrespective of the nature of the cause of the claim, demand or action, alleging loss, costs, expenses, damages or injuries (including injuries resulting in death) arising out of the use or possession of the data or the Data.

4. Additional Provisions: The terms contained in this Section are in addition to all of the rights and obligations of the parties under the Agreement. To the extent that any of the provisions of this Section are inconsistent with, or conflict with, any other provisions of the Agreement, the provisions of this Section shall prevail.

Appendices

II. Mexico. The following provision applies to the Data for Mexico, which includes certain data from the Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía (“INEGI”):

A. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging containing Data for Mexico shall contain the following notice: “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

III. Latin America Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Territory Notice

Ecuador “INSTITUTO GEOGRAFICO MILITAR DEL ECUADOR AUTORIZACION N° IGM-2011-01- PCO-01 DEL 25 DE ENERO DE 2011”
“source: © IGN 2009 - BD TOPO ®”

Guade-
loupe,
French
Guiana
and
Marti-
nique
Mexico “Fuente: INEGI (Instituto Nacional de Estadística y Geografía)”

IV. Middle East Territory

A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country Notice

Jordan “© Royal Jordanian Geographic Centre”. The foregoing notice requirement for Jordan Data is a material term of the Agreement. If Client or any of its permitted sublicensees (if any) fail to meet such requirement, HERE shall have the right to terminate Client’s license with respect to the Jordan Data.

B. Jordan Data. Client and its permitted sublicensees (if any) are restricted from licensing and/or otherwise distributing HERE’s database for the country of Jordan (“Jordan Data”) for use in Enterprise Applications to (i) non-Jordanian entities for use of the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) Jordan-based customers. In addition, Client, its permitted sublicensees (if any) and End-Users are restricted from using the Jordan Data in Enterprise Applications if such party is (i) a non-Jordanian entity using the Jordan Data solely in Jordan or (ii) a Jordan-based customer. For purposes of the foregoing, “Enterprise Applications” shall mean Geomarketing applications, GIS applications, mobile business asset management applications, call center applications, telematics applications, public organization Internet applications or for providing geocoding services.

Appendices

V. Europe Territory

A. Use of Certain Traffic Codes in Europe

1. General Restrictions Applicable to Traffic Codes. Client acknowledges and agrees that in certain countries of the Europe Territory, Client will need to obtain rights directly from third party RDS-TMC code providers to receive and use the Traffic Codes in the Data and to deliver to End-Users Transactions in any way derived from or based on such Traffic Codes. For such countries, HERE shall deliver the Data incorporating Traffic Codes to Client only after receiving certification from Client of its having obtained such rights.

2. Display of Third Party Rights Legends for Belgium. Client shall, for each Transaction that uses Traffic Codes for Belgium, provide the following notice to the End-User: "Traffic Codes for Belgium are provided by the Ministerie van de Vlaamse Gemeenschap and the Ministère de l'Équipement et des Transports."

B. Paper Maps. With respect to any license granted to Client relating to making, selling or distributing paper maps (i.e., a map fixed on a paper or paper-like medium): (a) such license with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain is conditioned on Client's entering into and complying with a separate written agreement with the Ordnance Survey ("OS") to create and sell paper maps, Client's paying to the OS any and all applicable paper map royalties, and Client's complying with the OS copyright notice requirements; (b) such license for selling or otherwise distributing for charge with respect to Data for the Territory of Czech Republic

is conditioned on Client's obtaining prior written consent from Kartografie a.s.; (c) such license for selling or distributing with respect to Data for the Territory of Switzerland is conditioned on Client's obtaining a permit from Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland; (d) Client is restricted from using Data for the Territory of France to create paper maps with a scale between 1:5,000 and 1:250,000; and (e) Client is restricted from using any Data to create, sell or distribute paper maps that are the same or substantially similar, in terms of data content and specific use of color, symbols and scale, to paper maps published by the European national mapping agencies, including without limitation, Landvermessungämter of Germany, Topografische Dienst of the Netherlands, Nationaal Geografisch Instituut of Belgium, Bundesamt für Landestopografie of Switzerland, Bundesamt für Eich-und Vermessungswesen of Austria, and the National Land Survey of Sweden.

C. OS Enforcement. Without limiting Section IV(B) above, with respect to Data for the Territory of Great Britain, Client acknowledges and agrees that the Ordnance Survey ("OS") may bring a direct action against Client to enforce compliance with the OS copyright notice (see Section IV(D) below) and paper map requirements (see Section IV(B) above) contained in this Agreement.

D. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy:

Country(ies) Notice

Appendices

Austria	“© Bundesamt für Eich- und Vermessungswesen”	Spain	“Información geográfica propiedad del CNIG”
Croatia Cyprus, Estonia, Latvia, Lithuania, Moldova, Poland, Slovenia and/or Ukraine	“© EuroGeographics”	Sweden	“Based upon electronic data © National Land Survey Sweden.”
France	“source: © IGN 2009 – BD TOPO ®”	Switzerland	“Topografische Grundlage: © Bundesamt für Landestopographie.
Germany	“Die Grundlagendaten wurden mit Genehmigung der zuständigen Behörden entnommen”	E. Respective Country Distribution. Client acknowledges that HERE has not received approvals to distribute map data for the following countries in such respective countries: Albania, Belarus, Kyrgyzstan, Moldova and Uzbekistan. HERE may update such list from time to time. The license rights granted to Client under this TL with respect to the Data for such countries are contingent upon Client’s compliance with all applicable laws and regulations, including, without limitation, any required licenses or approvals to distribute the Application incorporating such Data in such respective countries.	
Great Britain	“Contains Ordnance Survey data © Crown copyright and database right 2010 Contains Royal Mail data © Royal Mail copyright and database right 2010”	VI. Australia Territory	A. Third Party Notices. Any and all copies of the Data and/or packaging relating thereto shall include the respective Third Party Notices set forth below and used as described below corresponding to the Territory (or portion thereof) included in such copy: Copyright. Based on data provided under license from PSMA Australia Limited (www.pasma.com.au).
Greece	“Copyright Geomatics Ltd.”		
Hungary	“Copyright © 2003; Top-Map Ltd.”		
Italy	“La Banca Dati Italiana è stata prodotta usando quale riferimento anche cartografia numerica ed al tratto prodotta e fornita dalla Regione Toscana.”		
Norway	“Copyright © 2000; Norwegian Mapping Authority”		
Portugal	“Source: IgeoE – Portugal”		

Appendices

Product incorporates data which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited, GM Holden Limited, Intelomatics Australia Pty Ltd and Continental Pty Ltd.

B. Third Party Notices for Australia. In addition to the foregoing, the End-User Terms for any Application containing RDS-TMC Traffic Codes for Australia shall contain the following notice: “Product incorporates traffic location codes which is © 20XX Telstra Corporation Limited and its licensors.”

AT&T Vehicle Network Carrier Telematics Disclosure

END USER FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION MEANS YOU AND YOUR HEIRS, EXECUTORS, LEGAL PERSONAL REPRESENTATIVES AND PERMITTED ASSIGNS. FOR PURPOSES OF THIS SECTION “UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER” INCLUDES ITS AFFILIATES AND CONTRACTORS AND THEIR RESPECTIVE OFFICERS, DIRECTORS, EMPLOYEES, SUCCESSORS AND ASSIGNS. END USER HAS NO CONTRACTUAL RELATIONSHIP WITH THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND END USER IS NOT A THIRD PARTY BENEFICIARY OF ANY AGREEMENT BETWEEN FORD AND UNDERLYING CARRIER. END USER UNDERSTANDS AND AGREES THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HAS NO LEGAL, EQUITABLE, OR OTHER LIABILITY OF ANY KIND TO END USER. IN ANY EVENT, REGARDLESS OF THE FORM OF THE ACTION, WHETHER FOR BREACH OF CONTRACT, WARRANTY, NEGLIGENCE, STRICT LIABILITY IN TORT OR OTHERWISE, END USER’S EXCLUSIVE REMEDY FOR CLAIMS ARISING IN ANY WAY IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT, FOR ANY CAUSE WHATSOEVER, INCLUDING BUT NOT LIMITED TO ANY FAILURE OR

DISRUPTION OF SERVICE PROVIDED HEREUNDER, IS LIMITED TO PAYMENT OF DAMAGES IN AN AMOUNT NOT TO EXCEED THE AMOUNT PAID BY END USER FOR THE SERVICES DURING THE TWO-MONTH PERIOD PRECEDING THE DATE THE CLAIM AROSE.

(ii) END USER AGREES TO INDEMNIFY AND HOLD HARMLESS THE UNDERLYING WIRELESS SERVICE CARRIER AND ITS OFFICERS, EMPLOYEES, AND AGENTS AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS, INCLUDING WITHOUT LIMITATION CLAIMS FOR LIBEL, SLANDER, OR ANY PROPERTY DAMAGE, PERSONAL INJURY OR DEATH, ARISING IN ANY WAY, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, IN CONNECTION WITH THIS AGREEMENT OR THE USE, FAILURE TO USE, OR INABILITY TO USE THE DEVICE EXCEPT WHERE THE CLAIMS RESULT FROM THE UNDERLYING CARRIER’S GROSS NEGLIGENCE OR WILLFUL MISCONDUCT. THIS INDEMNITY WILL SURVIVE THE TERMINATION OF THE AGREEMENT.

(iii) END USER HAS NO PROPERTY RIGHT IN ANY NUMBER ASSIGNED TO THE DEVICE.

(iv) END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT FORD AND THE UNDERLYING CARRIER CANNOT GUARANTY THE SECURITY OF WIRELESS TRANSMISSIONS, AND WILL NOT BE LIABLE FOR ANY LACK OF SECURITY RELATING TO THE USE OF THE SERVICES

THE SERVICE IS FOR [END USER’S] USE ONLY AND END USER MAY NOT RESELL THE SERVICE TO ANY OTHER PARTY END USER UNDERSTANDS THAT THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT GUARANTEE ANY END USER UNINTERRUPTED SERVICE OR COVERAGE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER DOES NOT WARRANT THAT END USERS CAN OR WILL BE LOCATED USING THE SERVICE. THE UNDERLYING CARRIER

Appendices

MAKES NO WARRANTY, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF MERCHANTABILITY OR FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, SUITABILITY, OR PERFORMANCE REGARDING ANY SERVICES OR GOODS, AND IN NO EVENT SHALL AT&T BE LIABLE, WHETHER OR NOT DUE TO ITS OWN NEGLIGENCE, FOR ANY: (A) ACT OR OMISSION OF A THIRD PARTY; (B) MISTAKES, OMISSIONS, INTERRUPTIONS, ERRORS, FAILURES TO TRANSMIT, DELAYS, OR DEFECTS IN THE SERVICE PROVIDED BY OR THROUGH THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; (C) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY SUSPENSION OR TERMINATION BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER; OR (D) DAMAGE OR INJURY CAUSED BY A FAILURE OR DELAY IN CONNECTING A CALL TO ANY ENTITY, INCLUDING 911 OR ANY OTHER EMERGENCY SERVICE. TO THE FULL EXTENT ALLOWED BY LAW, THE END USER RELEASES, INDEMNIFIES AND HOLDS THE UNDERLYING CARRIER HARMLESS FROM AND AGAINST ANY AND ALL CLAIMS OF ANY PERSON OR ENTITY FOR DAMAGES OF ANY NATURE ARISING IN ANY WAY FROM OR RELATING TO, DIRECTLY OR INDIRECTLY, SERVICES PROVIDED BY THE UNDERLYING CARRIER OR ANY PERSON'S USE THEREOF, INCLUDING CLAIMS ARISING IN WHOLE OR IN PART FROM THE ALLEGED NEGLIGENCE OF THE UNDERLYING CARRIER.

VII. China Territory

Personal Use Only

You agree to use this Data together with [insert name of Client Application] for the solely personal, non-commercial purposes for which you were licensed, and not for service bureau, time-sharing or other similar purposes. Accordingly, but subject to the restrictions set forth in the following paragraphs, you may copy this Data only as necessary for your personal use to (i)

view it, and (ii) save it, provided that you do not remove any copyright notices that appear and do not modify the Data in any way. You agree not to otherwise reproduce, copy, modify, decompile, disassemble or reverse engineer any portion of this Data, and may not transfer or distribute it in any form, for any purpose, except to the extent permitted by mandatory laws.

Restrictions

Except where you have been specifically licensed to do so by NAV2, and without limiting the preceding paragraph, you may not (a) use this Data with any products, systems, or applications installed or otherwise connected to or in communication with vehicles, capable of vehicle navigation, positioning, dispatch, real time route guidance, fleet management or similar applications; or (b) with or in communication with any positioning devices or any mobile or wireless-connected electronic or computer devices, including without limitation cellular phones, palmtop and handheld computers, pagers, and personal digital assistants or PDAs. You agree to cease using this Data if you fail to comply with these terms and conditions.

Limited Warranty

NAV2 warrants that (a) the Data will perform substantially in accordance with the accompanying written materials for a period of ninety (90) days from the date of receipt, and (b) any support services provided by NAV2 shall be substantially as described in applicable written materials provided to you by NAV2, and NAV2's support engineers will make commercially reasonable efforts to solve any problem issues.

Appendices

rigCustomer Remedies

NAV2 and its suppliers' entire liability and your exclusive remedy shall be, at NAV2's sole discretion, either (a) return of the price paid, if any, or (b) repair or replacement of the Data that do not meet NAV2's Limited Warranty and that are returned to NAV2 with a copy of your receipt. This Limited Warranty is void if failure of the Data has resulted from accident, abuse, or misapplication. Any replacement Data will be warranted for the remainder of the original warranty period or thirty (30) days, whichever is longer. Neither these remedies nor any product support services offered by NAV2 are available without proof of purchase from an authorized international source.

No Other Warranty:

EXCEPT FOR THE LIMITED WARRANTY SET FORTH ABOVE AND TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) DISCLAIM ANY WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, OF QUALITY, PERFORMANCE, MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, OWNERSHIP OR NON-INFRINGEMENT. Certain warranty exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Limited Liability:

TO THE EXTENT PERMITTED BY APPLICABLE LAW, NAV2 AND ITS LICENSORS (INCLUDING THEIR LICENSORS AND SUPPLIERS) SHALL NOT BE LIABLE TO YOU: IN RESPECT OF ANY CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION, IRRESPECTIVE OF THE NATURE OF THE CAUSE OF THE CLAIM, DEMAND OR ACTION ALLEGING ANY LOSS, INJURY OR DAMAGES, DIRECT OR INDIRECT, WHICH MAY RESULT FROM THE USE OR POSSESSION OF THE INFORMATION; OR

FOR ANY LOSS OF PROFIT, REVENUE, CONTRACTS OR SAVINGS, OR ANY OTHER DIRECT, INDIRECT, INCIDENTAL, SPECIAL OR CONSEQUENTIAL DAMAGES ARISING OUT OF YOUR USE OF OR INABILITY TO USE THIS INFORMATION, ANY DEFECT IN THE INFORMATION, OR THE BREACH OF THESE TERMS OR CONDITIONS, WHETHER IN AN ACTION IN CONTRACT OR TORT OR BASED ON A WARRANTY, EVEN IF NAV2 OR ITS LICENSORS HAVE BEEN ADVISED OF THE POSSIBILITY OF SUCH DAMAGES. UNDER NO CIRCUMSTANCES SHALL NAV2'S OR ITS SUPPLIERS' LIABILITY HEREUNDER EXCEED THE PRICE PAID. Certain liability exclusions may not be permitted under applicable law, so to that extent the above exclusion may not apply to you.

Export Control

You agree not to export to anywhere any part of the Data provided to you or any direct product thereof except in compliance with, and with all licenses and approvals required under, applicable export laws, rules and regulations.

IP Protection

The Data are owned by NAV2 or its suppliers and are protected by applicable copyright and other intellectual property law and treaties. The Data are provided solely on the basis of a license to use, not sale.

Entire Agreement

These terms and conditions constitute the entire agreement between NAV2 (and its licensors, including their licensors and suppliers) and you pertaining to the subject matter hereof, and supersedes in their entirety any and all written or oral agreements previously existing between us with respect to such subject matter.

Appendices

Governing Law.

The above terms and conditions shall be governed by the laws of the People's Republic of China, without giving effect to (i) its conflict of laws provisions, or (ii) the United Nations Convention for Contracts for the International Sale of Goods, which is explicitly excluded. Any dispute arising from or in connection with the Data provided to you hereunder shall be submitted to the Shanghai International Economic and Trade Arbitration Commission for arbitration.

Gracenote® Copyright

CD and music-related data from Gracenote, Inc., copyright©

2000-2007 Gracenote. Gracenote Software, copyright © 2000-2007 Gracenote. This product and service may practice one or more of the following U.S. Patents 5,987,525; 6,061,680; 6,154,773; 6,161,132; 6,230,192; 6,230,207; 6,240,459; 6,330,593 and other patents issued or pending. Some services supplied under license from Open Globe, Inc. for U.S. Patent 6,304,523.

Gracenote and CDDDB are registered trademarks of Gracenote. The Gracenote logo and logotype, and the "Powered by Gracenote™" logo are trademarks of Gracenote.

Gracenote® End User License Agreement (EULA)

This device contains software from Gracenote, Inc. of 2000 Powell Street Emeryville, California 94608 ("Gracenote").

The software from Gracenote (the "Gracenote Software") enables this device to do disc and music file identification and obtain music-related information, including name, artist, track, and title information ("Gracenote Data") from online servers

("Gracenote Servers"), and to perform other functions. You may use Gracenote Data only by means of the intended End User functions of this device. This device may contain content belonging to Gracenote's providers. If so, all of the restrictions set forth herein with respect to Gracenote Data shall also apply to such content and such content providers shall be entitled to all of the benefits and protections set forth herein that are available to Gracenote. You agree that you will use the content from Gracenote ("Gracenote Content"), Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers for your own personal, non-commercial use only. You agree not to assign, copy, transfer or transmit the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Software or any Gracenote Data (except in a Tag associated with a music file) to any third party. YOU AGREE NOT TO USE OR EXPLOIT GRACENOTE CONTENT, GRACENOTE DATA, THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, OR GRACENOTE SERVERS, EXCEPT AS EXPRESSLY PERMITTED HEREIN.

You agree that your non-exclusive licenses to use the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers will terminate if you violate these restrictions. If your licenses terminate, you agree to cease any and all use of the Gracenote Content, Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and Gracenote Servers.

Gracenote, respectively, reserve all rights in Gracenote Data, the Gracenote Software, and the Gracenote Servers and Gracenote Content, including all ownership rights. Under no circumstances will either Gracenote become liable for any payment to you for any information that you provide,

Appendices

including any copyrighted material or music file information. You agree that Gracenote may enforce its respective rights, collectively or separately, under this agreement against you, directly in each company's own name.

Gracenote uses a unique identifier to track queries for statistical purposes. The purpose of a randomly assigned numeric identifier is to allow Gracenote to count queries without knowing anything about who you are. For more information, see the web page at www.gracenote.com for the Gracenote Privacy Policy.

THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE, EACH ITEM OF GRACENOTE DATA AND THE GRACENOTE CONTENT ARE LICENSED TO YOU "AS IS". NEITHER GRACENOTE MAKES ANY REPRESENTATIONS OR WARRANTIES, EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, REGARDING THE ACCURACY OF ANY GRACENOTE DATA FROM THE GRACENOTE SERVERS OR GRACENOTE CONTENT. GRACENOTE COLLECTIVELY AND SEPARATELY RESERVE THE RIGHT TO DELETE DATA AND/OR CONTENT FROM THE COMPANIES' RESPECTIVE SERVERS OR, IN THE CASE OF GRACENOTE, CHANGE DATA CATEGORIES FOR ANY CAUSE THAT GRACENOTE DEEMS SUFFICIENT. NO WARRANTY IS MADE THAT EITHER GRACENOTE CONTENT OR THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS ARE ERROR-FREE OR THAT THE FUNCTIONING OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR GRACENOTE SERVERS WILL BE UNINTERRUPTED. GRACENOTE IS NOT OBLIGATED TO PROVIDE YOU WITH ANY ENHANCED OR ADDITIONAL DATA TYPES THAT GRACENOTE MAY CHOOSE TO PROVIDE IN THE FUTURE AND IS FREE TO DISCONTINUE ITS ONLINE SERVICES AT ANY TIME. GRACENOTE DISCLAIM ALL WARRANTIES EXPRESS OR IMPLIED, INCLUDING, BUT NOT LIMITED TO,

IMPLIED WARRANTIES OF MERCHANTABILITY, FITNESS FOR A PARTICULAR PURPOSE, TITLE, AND NON-INFRINGEMENT. NEITHER GRACENOTE WARRANTS THE RESULTS THAT WILL BE OBTAINED BY YOUR USE OF THE GRACENOTE SOFTWARE OR ANY GRACENOTE SERVER. IN NO CASE WILL GRACENOTE BE LIABLE FOR ANY CONSEQUENTIAL OR INCIDENTAL DAMAGES OR FOR ANY LOST PROFITS OR LOST REVENUES FOR ANY REASON WHATSOEVER. © Gracenote 2007.

Radio Frequency Statement

FCC ID: ACJ-SYNCG3-L

IC: 216B-SYNCG3-L

This device complies with Part 15 of the FCC Rules and with RSS-210 of Industry Canada. Operation is subject to the following two conditions:

- (1)** This device may not cause harmful interference, and
- (2)** this device must accept any interference received, including interference that may cause undesired operation.

WARNING



Changes or modifications not expressly approved by the party responsible for compliance could void the user's authority to operate the equipment. The term "IC:" before the radio certification number only signifies that Industry Canada technical specifications were met.

The antenna used for this transmitter must not be co-located or operating in conjunction with any other antenna or transmitter.

Appendices

Taiwan Territory

Note: In accordance with the management approach of low-power radio wave radiation motors:

Article 12: For approved and certified low-power radiation motor models, companies, firms or users must not alter the frequency, increase the power or change the characteristics and functions of the original design without authorization.

Article 14: The usage of low-power radio-frequency motors must not affect aviation safety and interfere with legal telecommunications. Should interference be detected, immediately stop using the device and only resume usage after ensuring that there is no longer any interference. For the legal telecommunication and wireless telecommunication of the telco, the low-power radio frequency motor must be able to tolerate legal limits of interference from telecommunication, industrial, scientific and radio wave equipment.

SUNA TRAFFIC CHANNEL – TERMS AND CONDITIONS

By activating, using and/or accessing the SUNA Traffic Channel, SUNA Predictive or other content or material provided by Intelematics (together, **SUNA Products and/or Services**), you must accept certain terms and conditions. The following is a brief summary of the terms and conditions that apply to you. To view the full terms and conditions relevant to your use of the SUNA Products and/or Services, please consult:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

1. Acceptance

By using SUNA Products and/or Services, you will be deemed to have accepted and agreed to be bound by the terms and conditions fully detailed at:

Website
www.sunatraffic.com.au/termsandconditions/

2. Intellectual Property

SUNA Products and/or Services are for your personal use. You may not record, or retransmit the content, nor use the content in association with any other traffic information or route guidance service or device not approved by Intelematics. You obtain no right of ownership in any Intellectual Property Rights (including copyright) in the data that is used to provide SUNA Products and/or Services.

3. Appropriate Use

SUNA Products and/or Services are intended as an aid to personal motoring and travel planning, and do not provide comprehensive or accurate information on all occasions. On occasions, you may experience additional delay as a result of using SUNA Products and/or Services. You acknowledge that it is not intended, or suitable, for use in applications where time of arrival or driving directions may impact the safety of the public or yourself.

4. Use of SUNA Products and Services while driving

You, and other authorised drivers of the vehicle in which SUNA Products and/or Services are available or installed and active, remain at all times responsible for observing all relevant laws and codes of safe driving. In particular, you agree to only actively operate SUNA Products and/or Services when the Vehicle is at a complete stop and it is safe to do so.

Appendices

5. Service Continuity and Reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel

We will use reasonable endeavours to provide the SUNA Traffic Channel 24 hours a day, 365 days a year. The SUNA Traffic Channel may occasionally be unavailable for technical reasons or for planned maintenance. We will try to perform maintenance at times when congestion is light. We reserve the right to withdraw SUNA Products and/or Services at any time.

Also, we cannot assure the uninterrupted reception of the SUNA Traffic Channel RDS-TMC signal at any particular location.

6. Limitation of Liability

Neither Intelematics (nor its suppliers or the manufacturer of your device (the “**Suppliers**”)) shall be liable to you or to any third party for any damages either direct, indirect, incidental, consequential or otherwise arising out of the use of or inability to use SUNA Products and/or Services even if Intelematics or a Supplier has been advised of the possibility of such damages. You also acknowledge that the neither Intelematics nor any Supplier guarantees nor make any warranties that relate to the availability, accuracy or completeness of SUNA Products and/or Services, and to the extent which it is lawful to do so, both Intelematics and each Supplier excludes any warranties which might otherwise be implied by any State or Federal legislation in relation to SUNA Products and/or Services.

7. Please Note

Great care has been taken in preparing this manual. Constant product development may mean that some information is not entirely up-to-date. The information in this document is subject to change without notice.

WARNING



Driving while distracted can result in loss of vehicle control, crash and injury. We strongly recommend that you use extreme caution when using any device that may take your focus off the road. Your primary responsibility is the safe operation of your vehicle. We recommend against the use of any hand-held device while driving and encourage the use of voice-operated systems when possible. Make sure you are aware of all applicable local laws that may affect the use of electronic devices while driving.

Index

A

A/C	
See: Climate Control.....	74
About This Manual.....	5
ABS	
See: Brakes.....	106
ABS driving hints	
See: Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock Brakes.....	106
Accessories	
See: Replacement Parts Recommendation.....	8
Adjusting the Headlamps.....	153
Horizontal Aim Adjustment.....	155
Vertical Aim Adjustment.....	153
Adjusting the Steering Wheel.....	41
Airbag Disposal.....	25
Air Conditioning	
See: Climate Control.....	74
Air Filter	
See: Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	165
Air Vents.....	74
Center Air Vents.....	74
Side Air Vents.....	74
Appendices.....	250
Apps.....	225
.....	225
At a Glance.....	10
Instrument Panel Overview.....	10
Audible Warnings and Indicators.....	61
Automatic Transmission.....	61
Fuel Gauge.....	61
Headlamps On.....	61
Key Outside Car.....	61
Low Fuel Reminder.....	61
Seatbelt Reminder.....	61
Audio Control.....	41
Type One.....	42
Type Two.....	42
Audio System.....	197
General Information.....	197
Autolamps.....	48
Autolamps Delay.....	49
Windshield Wiper Activated Headlamps.....	49
Automatic Climate Control.....	76

Automatic Transmission.....	101
Automatic Transmission Adaptive Learning.....	105
Emergency Park Position Release Lever.....	104
If Your Vehicle Gets Stuck In Mud or Snow.....	105
Low (L).....	102
Selector Lever Positions.....	101
SelectShift™ Automatic Transmission.....	102
Autowipers.....	44
Auxiliary Power Points.....	88
Location.....	88

B

Battery	
See: Changing the 12V Battery.....	151
Bonnet Lock	
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	144
Brake and Clutch Fluid Check.....	150
Brakes.....	106
General Information.....	106
Breaking-In.....	127
Brakes and Clutch.....	127
Tires.....	127
Bulb Specification Chart.....	164

C

Cabin Air Filter.....	80
Capacities and Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	195
Capacities.....	195
Specifications.....	195
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L.....	194
Capacities.....	194
Specifications.....	194
Capacities and Specifications - 1.5L Diesel.....	192
Capacities.....	193
Specifications.....	193
Capacities and Specifications.....	183
Car Wash	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	166

Index

Catalytic Converter.....	97	Cleaning the Exterior.....	166
Driving with a Catalytic Converter.....	98	Body Paintwork Preservation.....	166
Center Console.....	89	Cleaning Stripes or Graphics.....	166
Changing a Bulb.....	155	Cleaning the Chrome Trim.....	166
Central High Mounted Brake Lamp.....	162	Cleaning the Headlamps.....	166
Direction indicators.....	159	Cleaning the Rear Window.....	166
Front Fog Lamps.....	157	Cleaning the Interior.....	167
Glove box lamp.....	157	Fabric, Carpets, Cloth Seats, Headliners	
Headlamp.....	155	and Floor Mats.....	167
Interior Lamp.....	163	Instrument Cluster Screens, LCD Screens	
Luggage Compartment Lamp, Footwell		and Radio Screens.....	168
Lamp and Tailgate Lamp.....	164	Leather Interior.....	168
Map Lamp (driver side).....	163	Rear Windows.....	168
Number Plate Lamp.....	162	Seatbelts.....	168
Reading Lamps.....	163	Storage Compartments, Cup Holders and	
Rear lamps.....	160	Ashtrays.....	168
Reversing Lamp and Fog Lamp.....	161	Suede Micro Fiber Fabric.....	168
Side Repeater.....	159	Cleaning the Wheels.....	169
Vanity lamp.....	162	Clearing All MyKeys.....	32
Changing a Fuse.....	142	Climate Control.....	74
Fuses.....	142	Principle of Operation.....	74
Changing a Road Wheel.....	178	Cold Weather Precautions.....	127
Installing a Road Wheel.....	180	Coolant Check	
Jacking and Lifting Points.....	179	See: Engine Coolant Check.....	149
Removing a Road Wheel.....	180	Cool Box.....	89
Vehicle Jack.....	179	Crash Sensors and Airbag Indicator.....	24
Vehicles With a Spare Wheel.....	178	Creating a MyKey.....	31
Changing the 12V Battery.....	151	Vehicles With a Key.....	31
Remove and Reinstall the Battery.....	152	Vehicles With Push-Button Start.....	31
Changing the Engine Air Filter.....	165	Cruise Control.....	43
Changing the Air Filter Element.....	165	Principle of Operation.....	116
Changing the Wiper Blades.....	153	Cruise control	
Changing the Windshield Wiper		See: Using Cruise Control.....	116
Blades.....	153		
Checking MyKey System Status.....	32	D	
MyKey Distance.....	32	Data Recording.....	7
Number of Admin Keys.....	33	Daytime Running Lamps.....	50
Number of MyKeys.....	32	Direction Indicators.....	51
Checking the Wiper Blades.....	152	Doors and Locks.....	34
Child Restraint Positioning.....	15	Driver Airbag.....	21
Child Safety.....	12	Driver Knee Airbag.....	23
Child Safety Locks.....	17	Driving Aids.....	118
Rear Left-Hand Door.....	17	Driving Hints.....	127
Rear Right-Hand Door.....	17	Driving Through Water.....	127
Cigar Lighter.....	88	DRL	
Location.....	88	See: Daytime Running Lamps.....	50
Cleaning Leather Seats.....	169		
Cleaning the Engine.....	167		

Index

E

Electromagnetic Compatibility.....	250
End User License Agreement.....	253
VEHICLE SOFTWARE END USER LICENSE AGREEMENT (EULA)	253
Engine Coolant Check.....	149
Adding Coolant.....	149
Engine Cooling Fan.....	149
Engine Immobilizer	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	40
Engine Oil Check.....	148
Adding Engine Oil.....	148
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.0L EcoBoost™/ 1.5L.....	148
Engine Oil Dipstick - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	148
Engine Specifications - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	185
Engine Specifications - 1.5L, Gasoline.....	183
Engine Specifications - 1.5L Diesel.....	184
Entertainment.....	215
AM/FM/DAB Radio.....	216
Apps.....	219
Bluetooth Stereo or USB.....	217
CD.....	217
Sources.....	216
Supported Media Players, Formats and Metadata Information.....	219
USB Port.....	219
Event Data Recording	
See: Data Recording.....	7
Exterior Mirrors.....	55
Power Exterior Mirrors.....	55

F

Fan	
See: Engine Cooling Fan.....	149
Fastening the Seatbelts.....	18
Using a Sliding Clip.....	18
Using Safety Belts During Pregnancy.....	19
Floor Mats.....	127
Fog Lamps - Front	
See: Front Fog Lamps.....	50
Front Fog Lamps.....	50
Fuel and Refueling.....	96

Fuel Consumption.....	99
Filling the Fuel Tank.....	99
Fuel Economy.....	99
Fuel Quality - Diesel.....	96
Long-Term Storage.....	97
Fuel Quality - Gasoline.....	97
Long-Term Storage.....	97
Fuel Shutoff.....	129
Fuse Box Locations.....	133
Battery Fuse Box.....	133
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	133
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	133
Fuses.....	133
Fuse Specification Chart.....	133
Battery Fuse Box.....	141
Engine Compartment Fuse Box.....	134
Passenger Compartment Fuse Box.....	139

G

Gauges.....	57
Engine Coolant Temperature Gauge.....	58
Fuel Gauge.....	58
Information Display.....	57
Gearbox	
See: Transmission.....	100
General Information on Radio	
Frequencies.....	26
Glasses Holder.....	89

H

Handbrake	
See: Parking Brake.....	107
Hazard Flashers.....	129
Headlamp Adjusting	
See: Adjusting the Headlamps.....	153
Headlamp Exit Delay.....	49
Headlamp Leveling.....	50
Headlamp Removal	
See: Removing a Headlamp.....	155
Headrest	
See: Head Restraints.....	81
Head Restraints.....	81
Adjusting the Head Restraints.....	81
Installing the Head Restraints.....	82
Removing the Head Restraints.....	82

Index

Heated Windows.....	80	MyKey.....	69
Heated Rear Window.....	80	Park Aid.....	70
Heating		Park Brake.....	71
See: Climate Control.....	74	Power Steering.....	71
Hill Start Assist.....	107	Stability Control.....	71
Switching the System On and Off.....	108	Starting System.....	72
Using Hill Start Assist.....	108	Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	67
Hints on Controlling the Interior		Traction Control.....	72
Climate.....	77	Transmission.....	73
Cooling the Interior Quickly.....	78	Vehicle Settings.....	73
General Hints.....	77	Installing Child Restraints.....	12
Heating the Interior Quickly.....	78	Booster Seats.....	13
Recommended Settings for Cooling.....	79	Child Restraints for Different Mass	
Recommended Settings for Heating.....	78	Groups.....	12
Vehicle Stationary for Extended Periods		ISOFIX Anchor Points.....	14
during Extreme High Ambient		Instrument Cluster.....	57
Temperatures.....	79	Instrument Lighting Dimmer.....	49
Windshield and Side Window Defrosting or		Interior Lamps.....	51
Defogging in Cold Weather.....	79	Courtesy lamp.....	51
Hints on Driving With Anti-Lock		Reading lamps.....	51
Brakes.....	106	Vanity lamp.....	52
Home Screen.....	209	Interior Mirror.....	55
Hood Lock		Auto-Dimming Mirror.....	55
See: Opening and Closing the Hood.....	144	Introduction.....	5
I		J	
Ignition Switch.....	91	Jump Starting the Vehicle.....	130
Starting the Engine.....	92	Connecting the Jumper Cables.....	130
Switching the Ignition Off.....	91	Jump Starting.....	131
Switching the Ignition On.....	91	Preparing Your Vehicle.....	130
Switching the Ignition On to Accessory		Removing the Jumper Cables.....	131
Mode.....	91	K	
Information Display Control.....	43	Keyless Entry.....	36
Information Displays.....	62	Disabled Keys.....	38
General Information.....	62	General Information.....	36
Information Messages.....	65	Intelligent Access - Locking and Unlocking	
Accessory Power.....	66	the Doors with the Key Blade.....	38
Airbag.....	66	Locking Using Intelligent Access.....	37
Alarm.....	66	Unlocking only Driver Door.....	38
Battery and Charging System.....	67	Unlocking Using Intelligent Access.....	37
Brake System.....	66	Keys and Remote Controls.....	26
Engine.....	67		
Fuel System.....	68		
Hill Start Assist.....	68		
Keyless Vehicle.....	68		
Lighting.....	69		
Maintenance.....	69		

Index

L

Lighting Control.....	47
Headlamp Flasher.....	48
High Beams.....	48
Parking Lamps.....	47
Lighting.....	47
General Information.....	47
Load Carriers	
See: Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	121
Load Carrying.....	120
General Information.....	120
Locking and Unlocking.....	34
Autounlock.....	35
Illuminated Entry.....	36
Illuminated Exit.....	36
Locking and Unlocking the Doors with the Key.....	35
Power Door Locks.....	34
Remote Control.....	34
Slam Lock Protect.....	36
Luggage Anchor Points.....	120
Luggage Covers.....	121
Lug Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	178
Lug Nuts.....	182

M

Maintenance.....	144
General Information.....	144
Manual Climate Control.....	75
Manual Seats.....	82
Adjusting the Height of the Driver's Seat.....	83
Adjusting the Lumbar Support.....	83
Moving the Seat Backward and Forward.....	82
Recline Adjustment.....	84
Type 1.....	82
Type 2.....	83
Manual Transmission.....	100
Parking Your Vehicle.....	100
Recommended Shift Speeds.....	100
Reverse.....	100
Using the Clutch.....	100
Message Center	
See: Information Displays.....	62

Mirrors	
See: Windows and Mirrors.....	53
Mobile Communications Equipment.....	9
Moonroof.....	55
Opening and Closing the Moonroof.....	56
Venting the Moonroof.....	56
MyKey Troubleshooting.....	33
All Vehicles.....	33
MyKey™.....	30
Principle of Operation.....	30

O

Oil Check	
See: Engine Oil Check.....	148
Opening and Closing the Hood.....	144
Closing the Hood.....	145
Opening the Hood.....	144

P

Parking Aids.....	111
Principle of Operation.....	111
Parking Brake.....	107
All Vehicles.....	107
Vehicles With Automatic Transmission.....	107
Vehicles With Manual Transmission.....	107
Passenger Airbag.....	22
.....	22
Passive Anti-Theft System.....	40
Arming the Engine Immobilizer.....	40
Coded Keys.....	40
Disarming the Engine Immobilizer.....	40
Principle of Operation.....	40
PATS	
See: Passive Anti-Theft System.....	40
Phone.....	219
During a Phone Call.....	223
Making Calls.....	222
Pairing Your Cell Phone for the First Time.....	219
Phone Menu.....	220
Receiving Calls.....	223
Smartphone Connectivity.....	224
Text Messaging.....	224
Post-Crash Alert System.....	132

Index

Power Door Locks	
See: Locking and Unlocking.....	34
Power Windows.....	53
Accessory Delay.....	54
Auto-Folding Mirrors.....	54
Enabling One-Touch up.....	53
Loose Mirror.....	54
Opening and Closing the Windows.....	53
Overriding Bounce-Back.....	53
Power-Folding Mirrors.....	54
Rear Window Lock.....	53
Programming a MyKey.....	32
Optional Settings.....	32
Push Button Ignition Switch.....	92
Failure to Start.....	92
Starting the Engine.....	92
Stopping the Engine When the Vehicle is Moving.....	93
Stopping the Engine with the Vehicle Stationary.....	93
Switching the Ignition On (Accessory Mode).....	92
R	
Rear Parking Aid.....	111
Rear Seats.....	84
Flip and Fold Seat.....	84
Folding the Seatback Down.....	85
Lifting the Seat Cushion.....	84
Type 1.....	85
Rear Under Floor Storage.....	120
Adjustable Load Floor.....	120
Rear View Camera.....	112
Enhanced Park Aids.....	115
Using the Rear View Camera System.....	113
Rear View Camera	
See: Rear View Camera.....	112
Rear Window Wiper and Washers.....	46
Rear Window Washer.....	46
Rear Window Wiper.....	46
Refueling.....	98
Fuel Filler Cap.....	98
Remote Control.....	26
Remote Control With a Folding Key Blade.....	26
Removing a Headlamp.....	155
Repairing Minor Paint Damage.....	169

Replacement Parts	
Recommendation.....	8
Collision Repairs.....	8
Scheduled Maintenance and Mechanical Repairs.....	8
Warranty on Replacement Parts.....	8
Replacing a Lost Key or Remote	
Control.....	29
Roadside Emergencies.....	129
Roof Racks and Load Carriers.....	121
Adjusting the Crossbar.....	122
Running-In	
See: Breaking-In.....	127
Running Out of Fuel.....	97

S

Safety Precautions.....	96
Seatbelt Height Adjustment.....	19
Seatbelt Reminder.....	19
Seatbelts.....	18
Seats.....	81
Security.....	40
Settings.....	227
Bluetooth.....	228
Clock.....	228
Display.....	237
Emergency Assistance.....	232
General.....	235
Media Player.....	227
Mobile Apps.....	234
Navigation.....	232
Phone.....	229
Radio.....	232
Sound.....	227
Valet Mode.....	237
Vehicle.....	236
Voice Control.....	237
Wi-Fi.....	235
Side Airbags.....	22
Side Curtain Airbags.....	23
Sitting in the Correct Position.....	81
Snow Chains	
See: Using Snow Chains.....	173
Spare Wheel	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	178
Special Notices.....	8

Index

Speed Control	
See: Cruise Control.....	116
Speed Limiter.....	118
Principle of Operation.....	118
Using Speed Limiter.....	118
Stability Control.....	110
Principle of Operation.....	110
Starter Switch	
See: Ignition Switch.....	91
Starting a Diesel Engine.....	95
Cold or Hot Engine.....	95
Failure to Start.....	95
Starting a Gasoline Engine.....	94
Cold or Hot Engine.....	94
Engine Idle Speed after Starting.....	95
Failure to Start.....	95
Fuel Flooded Engine.....	94
Starting and Stopping the Engine.....	91
General Information.....	91
Steering.....	118
Electric Power Steering.....	118
Steering Wheel.....	41
Storage Compartments.....	89
Sunroof	
See: Moonroof.....	55
Supplementary Restraints System.....	21
Principle of Operation.....	21
Symbols Glossary.....	5
SYNC™ 3.....	199
General Information.....	199
SYNC™ 3 Troubleshooting.....	238
T	
Tailgate.....	38
Closing the Tailgate.....	39
Opening the Tailgate.....	39
Technical Specifications	
See: Capacities and Specifications.....	183
Tire Care.....	171
Risks on the Road.....	172
Tire Wear.....	172
Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	174
Changing Tires With a Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	175
How Temperature Affects the Tire Pressures.....	175
Tire Pressure Monitoring System Reset Procedure.....	177
Understanding the Tire Pressure Monitoring System.....	175
Tire Pressures.....	181
Tires	
See: Wheels and Tires.....	171
Towing Points.....	123
Front Towing Point.....	123
Rear Towing Point.....	123
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Automatic Transmission.....	124
Emergency Towing.....	125
Towing the Vehicle on Four Wheels - Manual Transmission.....	125
Towing.....	123
Traction Control.....	109
Principle of Operation.....	109
Transmission.....	100
Transporting the Vehicle.....	124
Trip Computer.....	65
All Values.....	65
Average Fuel Consumption.....	65
Distance to Empty.....	65
Instantaneous Fuel.....	65
Outside Air Temperature.....	65
Resetting the Trip Computer.....	65
Trip Odometer.....	65
Trip Timer.....	65
U	
Under Hood Overview - 1.0L EcoBoost™.....	147
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L Duratorq-TDCi Diesel.....	146
Under Hood Overview - 1.5L.....	145
Under Seat Storage.....	90
USB Port.....	197
Using Cruise Control.....	116
Switching Cruise Control Off.....	117
Switching Cruise Control On.....	116
Using MyKey With Remote Start Systems.....	33
Using Snow Chains.....	173
Using Stability Control.....	110

Index

Using Traction Control.....	109
Switching the System Off Using a Switch.....	109
Switching the System Off Using the Information Display Controls.....	109
System Indicator Lights and Messages.....	109
Using Voice Recognition.....	209
Audio Voice Commands.....	210
Mobile App Voice Commands.....	213
Navigation Voice Commands.....	212
Phone Voice Commands.....	211
Voice Settings Commands.....	214
V	
Vehicle Care.....	166
Vehicle Dimensions.....	190
Vehicle Identification Plate.....	192
Ventilation	
See: Climate Control.....	74
Vents	
See: Air Vents.....	74
Voice Control.....	42
W	
Warning Lamps and Indicators.....	58
Airbag Warning Lamp.....	58
Anti-Lock Brake System Warning Lamp.....	59
Brake System Warning Lamp.....	59
Direction Indicator.....	59
Door Ajar Warning Lamp.....	60
Engine Coolant Temperature Warning Lamp.....	60
Fasten Seatbelt Warning Lamp.....	59
Front Fog Lamp Indicator.....	59
Glow Plug Indicator.....	59
Headlamp High Beam Indicator.....	59
Ignition Warning Lamp.....	59
Lamps on Indicator.....	59
Low Fuel Level Warning Lamp.....	59
Low Tire Pressure Warning Lamp.....	60
Malfunction Indicator Lamp.....	60
Oil Pressure Warning Lamp.....	60
Powertrain Malfunction.....	60
Rear Fog Lamp Indicator.....	60
Stability Control and Traction Control Indicator.....	60
Stability Control and Traction Control Off Warning Lamp.....	60
Water-In-Fuel Warning Lamp (Diesel).....	59
Warning Triangle.....	129
Washer Fluid Check.....	151
Washers	
See: Cleaning the Exterior.....	166
See: Wipers and Washers.....	44
Weights - 1.0L EcoBoost™, India.....	189
Weights - 1.5L, Diesel, India.....	186
Weights - 1.5L, Gasoline, India, 5-Speed Manual Transmission.....	187
Weights - 1.5L, Gasoline, India, 6-Speed Automatic Transmission.....	188
Wheel Nuts	
See: Changing a Road Wheel.....	178
Wheels and Tires.....	171
General Information.....	171
Windows and Mirrors.....	53
Windshield Washers.....	45
Windshield Wipers.....	44
Intermittent Wipe.....	44
Speed Dependent Wipers.....	44
Wiper Blades	
See: Checking the Wiper Blades.....	152
Wipers and Washers.....	44
Wrecker Towing	
See: Transporting the Vehicle.....	124

